

**SOI: 1.1/TAS**

**DOI: 10.15863/TAS**

**ISSN 2308-4944 (print)**

**ISSN 2409-0085 (online)**

**№ 06 (74) 2019**

**Teoretičeskaâ i prikladnaâ nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied Science**



---

**Philadelphia, USA**

**Teoretičkaâ i prikladnaâ  
nauka**

---

**Theoretical & Applied  
Science**

**06 (74)**

**2019**

# International Scientific Journal

## Theoretical & Applied Science

Founder: **International Academy of Theoretical & Applied Sciences**

Published since 2013 year. Issued Monthly.

International scientific journal «Theoretical & Applied Science», registered in France, and indexed more than 45 international scientific bases.

Editorial office: <http://T-Science.org> Phone: +777727-606-81

E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

### Editor-in Chief:

**Alexandr Shevtsov**

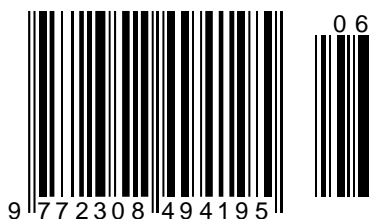
Hirsch index:

**h Index RISC = 1 (78)**

### Editorial Board:

1	Prof.	Vladimir Kestelman	USA	<b>h Index Scopus = 3 (38)</b>
2	Prof.	Arne Jönsson	Sweden	<b>h Index Scopus = 4 (21)</b>
3	Prof.	Sagat Zhunisbekov	KZ	-
4	Assistant of Prof.	Boselin Prabhu	India	-
5	Lecturer	Denis Chemezov	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 2 (61)</b>
6	Senior specialist	Elnur Hasanov	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = 6 (11)</b>
7	Associate Prof.	Christo Ananth	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
8	Prof.	Shafa Aliyev	Azerbaijan	<b>h Index Scopus = - (1)</b>
9	Associate Prof.	Ramesh Kumar	India	<b>h Index Scopus = - (2)</b>
10	Associate Prof.	S. Sathish	India	<b>h Index Scopus = 2 (13)</b>
11	Researcher	Rohit Kumar Verma	India	-
12	Prof.	Kerem Shixaliyev	Azerbaijan	-
13	Associate Prof.	Ananeva Elena Pavlovna	Russia	<b>h Index RISC = 1 (19)</b>
14	Associate Prof.	Muhammad Hussein Noure Elahi	Iran	-
15	Assistant of Prof.	Tamar Shiukashvili	Georgia	-
16	Prof.	Said Abdullaevich Salekhov	Russia	-
17	Prof.	Vladimir Timofeevich Prokhorov	Russia	-
18	Researcher	Bobir Ortikmirzayevich Tursunov	Uzbekistan	-
19	Associate Prof.	Victor Aleksandrovich Melent'ev	Russia	-
20	Prof.	Manuchar Shishinashvili	Georgia	-

ISSN 2308-4944



© Collective of Authors

© «Theoretical & Applied Science»

# International Scientific Journal

## Theoretical & Applied Science

---

**Editorial Board:**

**Hirsch index:**

21

Prof. Konstantin Kurpayanidi

Uzbekistan **h Index RISC = 8 (67)**

**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

---



ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, 06 (74), 840.  
Philadelphia, USA



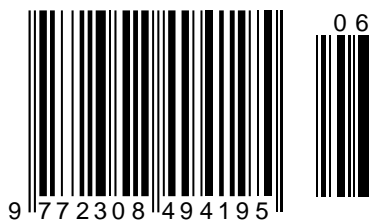
**Impact Factor ICV = 6.630**

**Impact Factor ISI = 0.829**  
based on International Citation Report (ICR)

**The percentage of rejected articles:**



ISSN 2308-4944



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](https://doi.org/10.15863/TAS) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](https://doi.org/10.15863/TAS)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 13.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Norberto M. Secretaria  
Cebu Technological University  
A.B., M.B.A, PH.D.  
Social Sciences and Management Department  
College of Arts and Sciences, Cebu, Philippines  
(0938-224-3169)  
[norbertosecretaria@gmail.com](mailto:norbertosecretaria@gmail.com)

## THE E-COMMERCE REVOLUTION: STATUS, AWARENESS AND DEMOGRAPHICS OF FARMERS IN CEBU CITY

**Abstract:** The advent of e-commerce have been so remarkable that it changes the face of modern business. This study presents the current status of e-commerce in the Philippines, as well as the demographic profiles of the small-scale farmers through survey method, in order to determine whether or not there is awareness among small-scale farmers on the available e-commerce and social media platform. The data revealed that, e-commerce in the Philippines is a promising industry with a significant share in the Gross Domestic Product. Though the same is true, enumerable factors continue to challenge its growth such as, political stability, natural disasters, technology availability, technology awareness and the perennial problem of poverty. Additionally, the data revealed that the small-scale farmers have very slight awareness on the current available e-commerce and social media platforms in the Philippines. Though there is found to have significant correlation between Age, Years in Farming and Income, the data finally revealed that there was no significant correlation between the level of awareness and the respondents' income. The data simply means that in the present status of e-commerce in the Philippines, huge effort still has to be exerted that the promise of e-commerce as a more efficient business platform, will penetrate the very root of the Philippine economy, the farmers.

**Key words:** e-Commerce, Social Media, Technology Awareness, Farmers, Poverty.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Secretaria, N. M. (2019). The e-commerce revolution: status, awareness and demographics of farmers in Cebu city. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 101-109.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-7> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.7>

### INTRODUCTION

Technology is an indispensable element of the modern society. It fuels the economy. Technology pierces through different fields and revolutionized the same. In this era of the 4<sup>th</sup> Industrial Revolution[1], [2], sales management was no longer spared by technological advancement. When the World Wide Web was developed by Tim Berners Lee, the world was restructured into a whole new face. People begun to communicate with stunning speed like never before. It was so revolutionary, that distance was no longer a barrier for delivering and receiving message. With this development, the world's economy begun to grow enormously, people communicate so easily from all corners of the globe, products are produced at lightning speed. With the advent of smart phones, people are easily connected with just a tap of the

fingertips. Commerce is transformed to fit in a device in every person's palms.

E-commerce was made possible when the internet was introduced for commercialization in 1991. Since then, e-commerce have a tremendous positive impact on success of a business venture [3], [4] Word of mouth in the electronic form is also a very powerful marketing tool [5]. Several studies published the positive inclination of electronic marketing towards business success [3], [5]–[7]. Additional studies provided that internet marketing plays a very important role in the success of a business[8]–[10].

On the other long arm of the story, while industry flourished, industrial goods available in the internet, farmers in the Philippines remained in the dark corners of traditional buy and sell. They remain to be the poorest sector in the Philippines[11]. This, noting

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

that farmers, in all of history are indispensable element of the human society. They serve to be the most significant part of human development. What people eat and drink are proud produce of a laboring farmer somewhere around the globe. As one enjoys every party, celebrations, or simply bumping into a drive through fast food chain, a farmer made it possible with their own sweat.

It should be noted however that the focus of this paper are small scale farmers, with land area less than one hectare of land cultivation[12]. Industrial farms can afford heavy advertising and aggressive marketing but small scales cannot. Small-scale farmers, especially in the Philippines can in no way compete with industrial farms in terms of advertising and marketing in the traditional mediums. The rate is just so high. For instance, in the national scale advertising on television can cost up to Php 800,000.00 or \$14,000.00 per 30 seconds of air-time. Thanks to the cheap and modern way of advertising medium, the small scale farmers can now compete with the industrial farms. This is where the e-commerce, in theoretical sense, plays a very important role.

Farmers, through available platforms can explore the wide horizon of the internet through electronic commerce, so they can sell farm produce right on the palm of their hands. This notion should have been the ideal sense but boils down to the questions of whether or not farmers know or even aware that these platforms are available. China and India have be in route to e-commerce in agriculture[13], [14]. Or simply, whether or not farmers do know how to make use of these platforms should they happen to know the said technology. Added to the fact that farmers are ageing. What could be its implication to the level of awareness as well? These things mentioned are mere possible factors and indicators that may fill the gray area of understanding regarding this matter. With all the studies available in the fields of research, very seldom a study can be found focusing on the awareness of farmers in the modern method of selling farm produce.

This paper will present the current status of e-commerce in the Philippines, the awareness on e-commerce and social media technology, as well as demographics among small scale farmers. Finally, to show whether or not there is a correlation between demographic variables, awareness to income, and in the attempt to fill the gap, as to whether or not, this explosion of e-commerce in the Philippines poses considerable impact to small scale farmers.

## METHODOLOGY

This paper utilized descriptive correlational method. The data was gathered through a survey method. There were a total of 156 respondents in this study. The respondents were selected through multi-stage random sampling from the 52 local farmers' organizations from the mountain villages of Cebu City, Philippines. The data gathered was treated, analyzed and interpreted. In the analysis of the data, statistical software were used. Secondary data were also utilized to present the status of e-commerce in the Philippines.

## RESULTS AND DISCUSSIONS

This portion of the paper presents the data gathered in this research, together with its interpretation, analysis and discussions. Secondary data presented therein are sourced from reputable institution which are respectfully cited.

### *Ecommerce in the Philippines*

We Are Social, published in 2018 that internet users passes the 4 Billion mark. This simply means that the world is rapidly interconnected, and ecommerce will become the controlling industry for sales and marketing.

With the unquestionable rise in the world's connectivity, The Philippines wishes to take a bigger share of the pie and the glory that goes with it. Philippines is an archipelagic country dubbed to be one of the fastest growing economy in the world[15]. Its populations have been growing at 1.72% annually, reaching at 100.98 Millions in Philippines Statistics Authority official census of 2015. The Philippines is one of fastest growing internet population in the world, according to statistical calculations published by the Department of Trade and Industries – Philippines, the annual growth of internet users in the Philippines in the past five years reached as high as 530%, Indonesia at 430% and India at 230% [16]

In the past years, ecommerce in the Philippines have been very promising. The Philippine ecommerce industry is at US\$1.15 Billion and it is to rise at 104% from 2013-2018[17]. Considering the relatively youth populace in the social media and the internet, it would be expected that the growth of this industry will be exponential.

An amazing truth about the Philippine digital economy is that, the total subscription exceeds the total population. There are a total of 121.4 Million mobile subscription in the Philippines, against the total population 105 Million in real time counting. That is simply 115% of the total population [18], [19]

In support to the progress of ecommerce in the Philippines, the Philippine congress of both houses, the senate and the House of Representatives passed several measures in order to promote and regulate the ecommerce business and the use of the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

internet. Republic Act 8792, or The Electronic Commerce Act (ECA) aims to facilitate domestic and international dealings, transactions, arrangements agreements, contracts and exchanges and storage of information through the utilization of electronic, optical and similar medium, mode, instrumentality and technology to recognize the authenticity and reliability of electronic documents related to such activities and to promote the universal use of electronic transaction in the government and general public (Sec 3, RA 8792). The Cybercrime Prevention Act of 2010, Republic Act 10175 provides protection of internet users including the ecommerce industry from exploits of the evil doers (**Sec. 1., R.A. 10175**). The Ecommerce Act or Access Device Regulation Act, Republic Act 8484 which specifies that the State shall protect the rights and define the liabilities of parties in such commercial transactions by regulating the issuance and use of access devices (Sec 2, RA 8484). On 20 October 2008, The Philippine Government through the Department of Trade and Industry, Department of Health, and Department of Agriculture produced a joint memorandum in order to protect the ecommerce users. (DTI-DOH-DA Joint Administrative Order (AO) No. 1 - "Rules and Regulations for Consumer Protection in a Transaction Covered by the Consumer Act of the Philippines (R.A. 7394) through Electronic Means under the E-commerce Act (R.A. 8792)" or the E-Consumer Protection Guidelines).

Further development ensued to protect online users and the ecommerce buyers through Republic Act No. 10173 or the Data Privacy Law was enacted in 2012 with the intention of protecting personal information (including sensitive personal information) of Filipinos. In similar line, taxes are now filed and paid through electronic means. Electronic systems flourished, E-banking, E-payment and the Government Implements the National WiFi System with a budget of 1.4 Billion Pesos [21]. This introduction of new technology in public places as well as state colleges and universities found to have promising result towards adopting and use of systems for social commerce, social media or ecommerce for that matter[22].

Development and promising progress is not always without a challenge. The Philippines is ranked among countries in the world with the slowest internet connection.

Aside from the fact that the country's internet speed is one of the slowest in the world with the highest price, it is important to take into consideration the following issues and concerns:

**Supply Chain and Distribution Management.** it is also an archipelagic country that makes logistics more difficult to maintain[23], [24]. Supply chain is particularly difficult in an archipelagic country where

typhoons and other natural disaster is a frequent reality. For instance, the Philippines is a country split in two by the most active volcanic ring, the pacific ring of fire. Earthquake is frequent in the country which almost always imposes damage to resources and infrastructures such as roads, bridges, buildings and the like, which could in effect endanger the stability of an ecommerce business which heavily rely on the distributions and delivery.

**Natural Disasters.** This is closely related with the problems of delivery and distributions of goods ordered online. Natural disasters such as typhoons is very frequent in the Philippines which at some point of the history have rendered the entire Philippine Government inutile, during the devastation of the strongest super typhoon to ever land, HAIYAN with local name Yolanda. In an archipelagic country like the Philippines, typhoons disables all kinds of travel, by sea, land or air, since it is particularly dangerous. Landsides can block roads, wind can topple electric posts or cellular sites, and restrict ships form voyaging the sea. These means mentioned are the primary transport medium to which an ecommerce can thrive.

**Political Stability.** The Philippine political environment is pretty unstable. Insurgency from leftist groups and extremists sprouts from all over the place. It is primarily true that business relies heavily on stability and peace. When there is a glimpse of terror, business frown and decay.

**Poverty.** As presented in the introduction of this paper, farmers form part of the most impoverished sectors of the Philippine society. Poverty of the great number is a threat to the stability of any business venture, including ecommerce for that matter. The Philippines statistics authority in 2015 provided that the poverty threshold in the Philippines is at PhP 9,140.00. This simply means that 26.1% of the population lives below poverty line. Farmers, Fishermen and Children remains to be consistent among the poorest sectors in the Philippines society [25].

**Technology Availability.** Technology have been rapidly changing and controlling the worldwide affairs. However, in third world countries have a fundamental problem with the availability of technology. To the end of the population where basic necessity is given the utmost importance, spending of technology infrastructure is left at lesser priority. The government, though in constant work to keep at par with the standard of technology in the world, the fact still remains that the Philippines is lagging behind in terms of technological advancement. Though, the positive side of this is that, smartphones is widely used among Filipinos with significant penetration rate among millennial.

**Technology Awareness.** Significant number of Filipinos have smart phones. In fact, mobile



**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

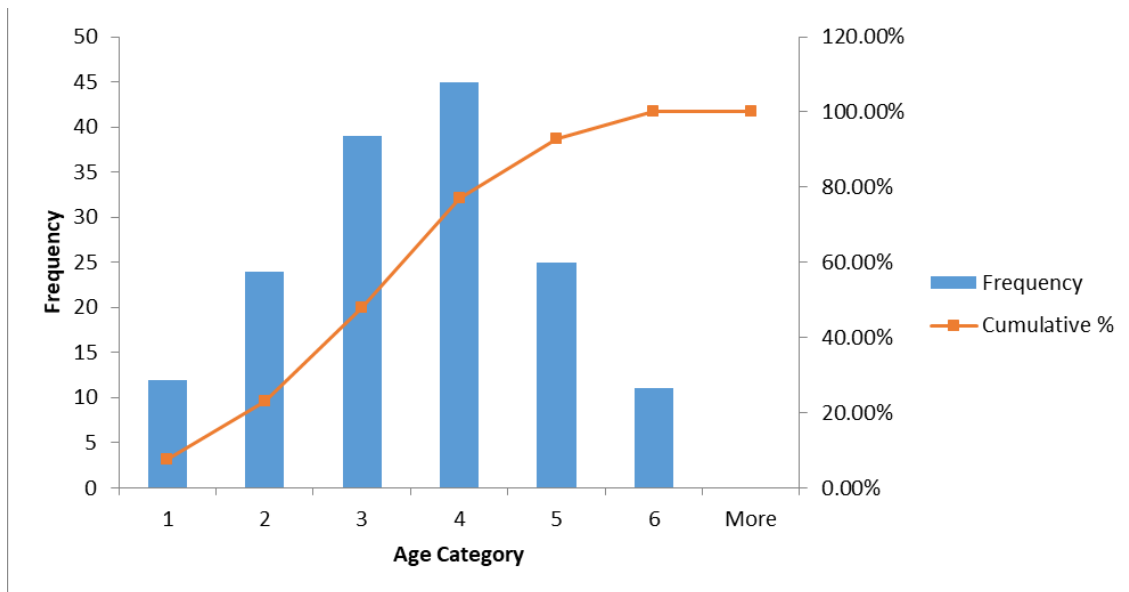
subscription in the Philippines exceed beyond the total number of population where unique subscription at 60 Million. While the same is true, the ultimate purpose of using smartphones are limited only for playing games, chatting, and social media and other form of communication. One of the trending activity on smartphones and the internet in the Philippines is online buying through different ecommerce, however, very few have concrete idea the same platform can be used for selling goods. This knowledge insufficiency is particularly prevalent among farmers who either have no proper access to technology or have insufficient knowledge that such platform of technology is available as a tool for improving agriculture business.

*Demographic Profile*

In the previous discussion, it was established that e-commerce is indeed the way of the future. At this

point, we now examine the current status, as to demographic distribution of the small scale farming in Cebu City, and we will try to relate it into the concept of e-commerce.

It is very significant to determine the respondent's age distribution since could be a determinant factor in the production capacity of a farmer. A recent study in China reveals that aging farmers affect the total productivity[26]. The presents the age distribution of the respondents. The data revealed that the highest response in terms of age is from 46-55 years old with the frequency of 45 or 28.8% of the total respondents. While the lowest frequency is 11 or 7.1% of the respondents with the ages 66-75 years old.



*\*1. 16-25 years old, 26-35 years old, and so on in 10 intervals*

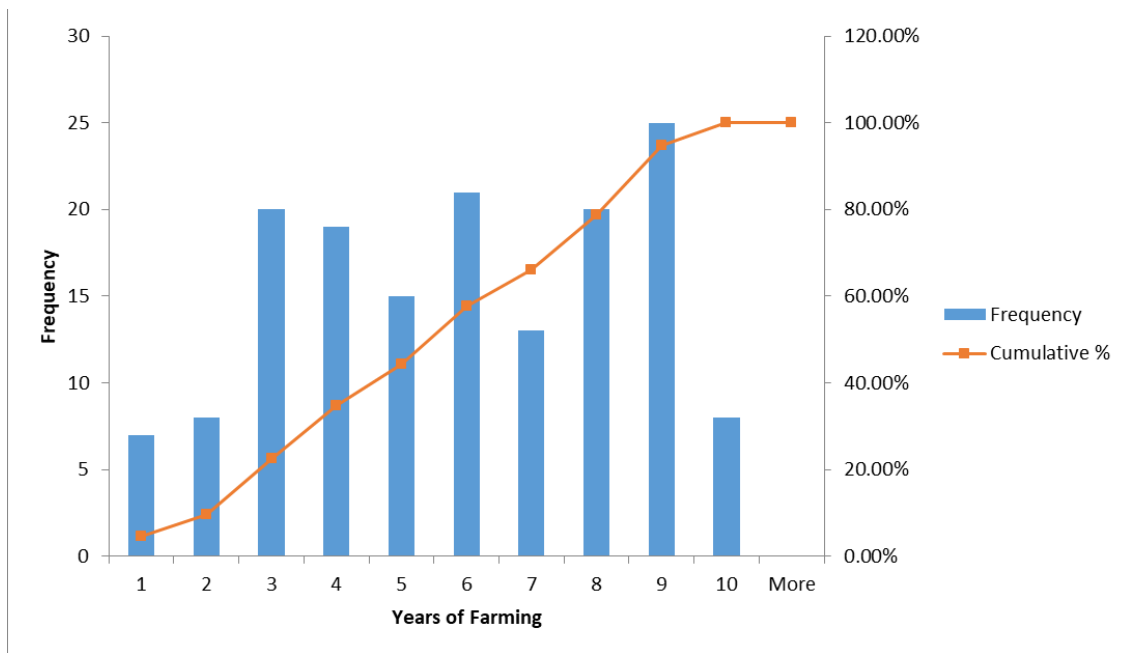
**Figure 1. Age Distribution**

Based on the data it can be interpreted that farmers are aging and that there is a possibility of shortage of farmers in the next 20 years (Villar, 2018.) This is in congruence with the farmers' census from

the Philippine Statistics Authority, which provides that the average age of farmers in the Philippines is in the range of 57-59 years old (PSA, 2016).

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350



\*1. 1-5 years, 2. 6-10 years, and so on in five year interval

**Figure 2. Length of Farming Years**

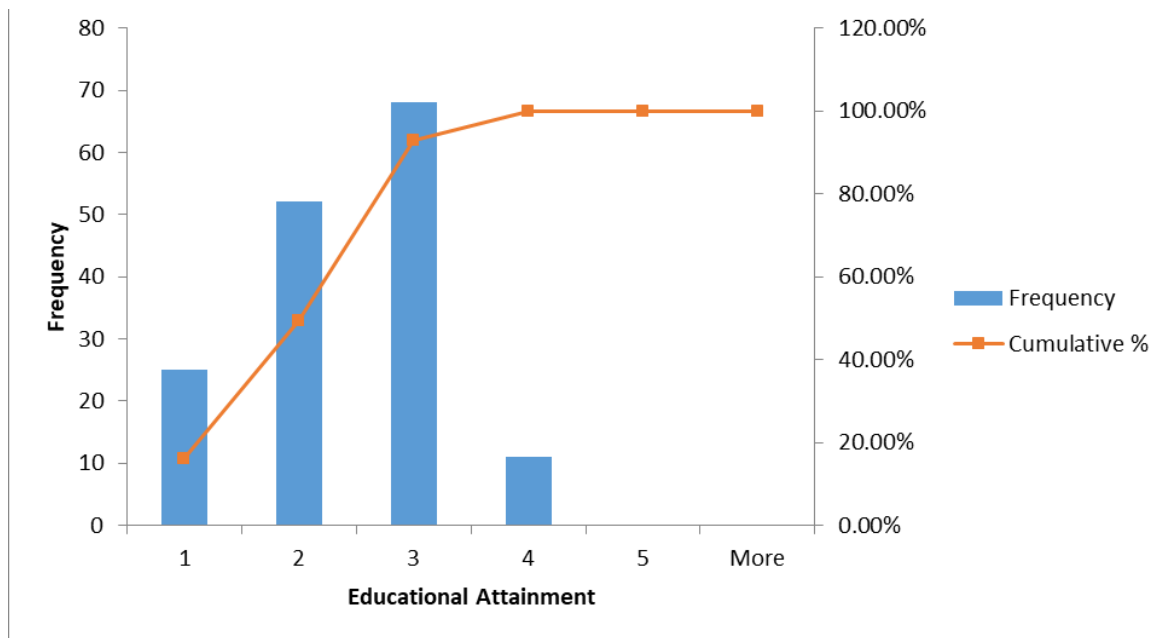
As to the length of farming the data revealed the highest number of years in farming is 31-35 years with the frequency of 28 or 17.9% of the total respondents. To have a clearer view of the frequency distribution by age and the number of farming years. The highest frequency response in each cross-tabulated categories is 12, the cross-section between 46-55 years old in the age category and 31-35 years of farming years. It shows the verifiability of the data that displays accuracy in terms of age distribution within this context. The data simply provide support on the national statistics in agriculture regarding the age distribution of farmers in the Philippines (PSA, 2016).

It is important that the farmers are well articulated with the ability to comprehend and understanding of farming instructions given to them by the experts in the field of agriculture. This is because farming is not an easy venture, it requires deeper learning, patience, and precision. With this in mind, the proponent of this research propounded

questions on the educational attainment of the farmers in the Cebu City. Based on the data, the highest frequency is 68 or 43.6% of the respondents are High School Graduate or at least have studied High school. The lowest frequency is 11 or 7.1% of the total population. Farmers with elementary educations run second in the list with 52 responses or 33.3% of the total respondents. Lastly, farmers with No Education at all comprise 16% or 25 responses from the total samples. The data can be interpreted as a very much of a threat to productivity. The lower the educational attainment of farmers the lower the productivity. Based on the study published in the American Journal of Agricultural Economics (AJAE) it was found out that that education will have larger impacts on agricultural productivity in the presence of rapid technical change since it helps farmers to adjust more readily to the new opportunities provided by technological innovations (Klasen and Reimers, 2011).

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350



\*1. No Education, 2. Elementary, 3. High School, 4. College

**Figure 3. Educational Attainment**

**Awareness on Ecommerce Platforms**

While the world is rapidly advancing to the cyber world where everything is available on the internet, accessible through the touch of a button or a tap in the mobile phone. It is significant to determine whether or not the farmers are aware of the present advancement

of marketing technology. That, any person can communicate through the internet and sell products from it. Table 5 shows the relevant level of awareness of the farmers in terms of social media marketing technology.

**Table 1. E-Commerce Platforms**

	Mean	Std. Deviation	Interpretation
Facebook Marketplace	2.89	1.633	Somewhat Aware
Lazada	2.17	1.464	Slightly Aware
Shopee	1.99	1.191	Slightly Aware
Olx	1.81	1.106	Slightly Aware
Shopify	1.59	0.922	Not Aware
Youtube	1.61	0.989	Not Aware
Overall	2.01		Slightly Aware

Table 1 presents the respondent's responses to the propounded questions of e-commerce platform technology awareness. Facebook is considered to be the most well know platform in the social media with the mean of 2.89 which can be interpreted by the use of the scoring procedure as slightly aware. This means that the farmers know a little about Facebook Marketplace but not using it as a tool for selling. The list is followed by Lazada, Shopee, Olx with means,

2.17, 1.99 and 1.81 which can be interpreted as Slightly Aware, respectively. Shopify and YouTube, is considered to be the most unpopular means of selling online with means 1.59 and 1.61 which can be interpreted as Not Aware. The respondent farmers does not have an idea that the said platforms can be a vehicle for selling goods and services.

Little or no awareness of the e-commerce and social media platforms could mean a great loss for the

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

farmers, this is in consideration of the fact that the same platform is a means of which the modern day commerce in exchanging products or services. Modernity is anchored through the internet. Today's consumer demands a seamless online journey across the various digital platforms. Hence it is crucial for them to make the customers' journey easy and pain-free so that customers do not disengage from the process and go elsewhere (<https://goo.gl/LQ3Y8X>).

### Income

The total volume of the product among the 156 respondents of the study is 277, 363 kilograms of high-value crops. The productivity level was measured in 3 months to determine the accuracy of harvest variation per item. The total revenue of the farmers is PHP. 8,857,700.00. The average revenue per farmer in three months is PHP. 56,780.12.

The total per month revenue is PHP. 18, 926.00 per farmer. To get the net income per month, the total revenue will be deducted a total of 60% as farm capitalization or cost. The farm capitalization per farmer is PHP. 11,356.02. The net income per month of a farmer in the City of Cebu is PHP. 7,570.68.

$$I = \frac{(P1 \cdot Pr1 + P2 \cdot Pr2 \dots) / 3 - ((P1 \cdot Pr1 + P2 \cdot Pr2 \dots) / 3) \cdot 0.6}{5}$$

*I* = individual income per month

*P* = Farm Product Produced

*Pr* = Price Per Product Produced

*3* = is a constant, which refers to the three months

60% = is a defined constant based on the City Agriculture department, approximated total investment per crop.

*5* = is a constant, referring to the typical number per family in the City of Cebu.

With a family of five, the income of farmers in the City of Cebu is way beyond the poverty line. The data reveals that the average allowable consumption for every family member in a month is only Php. 1,514.13. Which means that indeed, the Philippines Statistics Authority is correct in pointing out that farmers is the poorest sector in the Philippines. In 2015, the income required for a family of five is at least PhP 9,140.00 to meet the basic food and non-food needs (PSA, 2015).

### Correlation to Income

Using correlation method through the use of Statistical Software such as Microsoft Excel, based on the 156 samples, the data revealed, that as of the present status of technology awareness and use, there is no significant statistical correlation between awareness and use of e-commerce and social media to income among small-scale farmers at p-value of 0.074. Though, it can be observed from the data that there was inclination towards positive correlation, it is still not within the standard significance level. This simply means that at the present status of technology and awareness among small scale farmers, there is found no significant impact on income. In the simplest term, by statistical standard, the awareness and use of social media doesn't have enough evidence to have an impact on income among small-scale farmers in Cebu City, Philippines.

**Table 2. Profile and Income**

INCOME		
	p-value	Interpretation
e-Commerce Awareness	0.074	There is no significant correlation
Age	0.015	There is significant correlation
No of Farming Years	0.034	There is significant correlation
Educational Attainment	0.149	There is no significant correlation

\*Correlation significant at  $\alpha=0.05$

The data also reveals that, Educational Attainment does not have any correlation with income, at p-value of 0.149. This means that there is not enough evidence that education have direct or indirect effect on the farmers' income. Moreover, there is statistical correlation between the number of years on farming at p-value of .034, and Age, with the p-value of .015. This means that there is enough evidence that Age and the length of farming have an effect on the income of farmers. This is in consonance

to the observable fact within the society that indeed, age can be a determining factor towards higher income. The positive correlation between age and income however is not a new discovery, since enumerable studies shows the same results.

### Implications

The empowerment arising from technological advancement is beyond question in all fields of endeavor. Poverty as a perennial horror continues to

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

batter the third world, in which technology has to play a very important role to subdue its horrific impact. The governments in the world, not only in the Philippines have to formulate strategic platforms, Public Private Partnerships and government funded programs to solidify the communication infrastructures and induce public education on the availability of technology that allows small-scale business including farmers to sell its goods through the world wide web. Through the development of the communication infrastructure, more will be able to access the web at the lower cost, thereby augmenting the potential it can offer to the smallest member of the society.

The Department of Agriculture in the Philippines, together with other government agencies have to formulate plans that empowers the small scale farmers at the bottom, use of technology for the

marketing of farm produce. Concerned agencies have to establish an implementation and monitoring panel that ensures proper aid for the empowerment of farmers that works so hard somewhere in the islands of the Philippine Archipelago.

## CONCLUSION

The requisite of development in the modern world is to adapt on whatever technological advancement it offers. In this case, farmers, with the aid of concerned state agencies have to acquire knowledge on the use of technology in modern commerce. Market demands widens as cyber world expands. To cater such demands, farmers must be brought to the internet, with the advent of e-commerce platforms, farmers can sell to anyone from anywhere.

## References:

1. Moavenzadeh, J. (n.d.). *The 4 th Industrial Revolution: Reshaping the Future of Production*.
2. Tien, J. M. (2012, Sept.). The next industrial revolution: Integrated services and goods," *J. Syst. Sci. Syst. Eng.*, vol. 21, no. 3, pp. 257–296.
3. Eid, R., & El-Gohary, H. (2013, Jan.). The impact of E-marketing use on small business enterprises' marketing success. *Serv. Ind. J.*, vol. 33, no. 1, pp. 31–50.
4. Tsiotsou, R. H., & Vlachopoulou, M. (2011, March). Understanding the effects of market orientation and e-marketing on service performance. *Mark. Intell. Plan.*, vol. 29, no. 2, pp. 141–155.
5. Cheung, C. M., & Thadani, D. R. (2010). *The Effectiveness of Electronic Word-of-Mouth Communication: A Literature Analysis*.
6. Chaib-draa, B., & Müller, J. P. (2006). *Multiagent based supply chain management*. Springer-Verlag.
7. Matsuo, T., & Colomo-Palacios, R. (2013). *Towards New Generation E-Business and Marketing*, pp. 1–3.
8. El-Gohary, H. (2010). *E-Marketing-A literature Review from a Small Businesses perspective*.
9. Gangeshwer, D. K. (2013). E-Commerce or Internet Marketing: A Business Review from Indian Context. *Int. J. u-and e-Service*, vol. 6, no. 6, pp. 187–194.
10. Leung, X. Y., Bai, B., & Stahura, K. A. (2015, May). The Marketing Effectiveness of Social Media in the Hotel Industry. *J. Hosp. Tour. Res.*, vol. 39, no. 2, pp. 147–169.
11. (2017). PSA, *Farmers, Fishermen and Children consistently posted the highest poverty incidence among basic sectors - PSA / Philippine Statistics Authority*. Retrieved Nov.16, 2018, from <https://psa.gov.ph/content/farmers-fishermen-and-children-consistently-posted-highest-poverty-incidence-among-basic>
12. Briones, R. M. (2015, Aug.). "Small Farmers in High-Value Chains: Binding or Relaxing Constraints to Inclusive Growth?" *World Dev.*, vol. 72, pp. 43–52.
13. Wen, W. (2010). "Agricultural e-commerce application mode in China," in *2010 2nd IEEE International Conference on Information Management and Engineering*, pp. 616–619.
14. Jamaluddin, N. (2013, Jan.). "Adoption of E-commerce Practices among the Indian Farmers, a Survey of Trichy District in the State of Tamilnadu, India," *Procedia Econ. Financ.*, vol. 7, pp. 140–149.
15. Martinez, C. P., Castaneda, M. G., Marte, R. B., & Roxas, B. (2015, Nov). "Effects of institutions on ecological attitudes and behaviour of consumers in a developing Asian country: the case of the Philippines," *Int. J. Consum. Stud.*, vol. 39, no. 6, pp. 575–585.
16. (2018). Department of Trade and Industries, "E-Commerce," Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PPIHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

- <https://www.dti.gov.ph/ecommerce/84-main-content/eco-news>
- (2015). Demandware and Singapore, "Developing eCommerce Market Entry Strategies in Asia-Pacific – Advisory Report 2015. Google Search". Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from <http://www.specommerce.com.s3.amazonaws.com/dl/wp/SingPost-eCommerce-Demandware-Advisory-Report-2015.pdf>
  - (2018). We Are Social, "Digital in 2018 in Southeast Asia Part 2 - South-East". Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from <https://www.slideshare.net/wearesocial/digital-in-2018-in-southeast-asia-part-2-southeast-86866464>
  - (2018). Rappler and GLOBE, "A profile of Internet users in the Philippines". Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from <https://www.rappler.com/brandrap/profile-internet-users-ph>
  - (2010). "R.A. 10175". Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from [https://www.lawphil.net/statutes/repacts/ra2012/ra\\_10175\\_2012.html](https://www.lawphil.net/statutes/repacts/ra2012/ra_10175_2012.html)
  - (2015). "Transparency Seal | Free Public Wi-Fi". Retrieved Feb.12, 2019, from <http://freepublicwifi.gov.ph/transparency-seal/>
  - Lewis, K. P., Luis, M., Santos, C. D., & Gonzales, D. B. (2018). "Social Commerce Acceptance of Students in a State University in the Philippines: A Unified View," *Circ. Comput. Sci.*, vol. 3, no. 3.
  - Tan, J., & Indramawan, A. (2018). *Probing into e-commerce logistics: a strategic growth option of serbada company*.
  - Tongzon, J. L. (2018). *Regulatory challenges in the Philippine logistics industry*. Philippine Institute for Development Studies.
  - (2017). PSA, "Philippine Statistics Authority | Republic of the Philippines". Retrieved Apr.11, 2019, from <https://psa.gov.ph/poverty-press-releases/nid/120251>
  - Guo, G., Wen, Q., & Zhu, J. (2015, Oct.). "The Impact of Aging Agricultural Labor Population on Farmland Output: From the Perspective of Farmer Preferences," *Math. Probl. Eng.*, vol. 2015, pp. 1–7.
  - Villar, M. B. (2017). "Of aging farmers and food security | BusinessMirror." Retrieved Feb.04, 2019, from <https://businessmirror.com.ph/2017/03/06/of-aging-farmers-and-food-security/>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](http://1.1/TAS) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](http://10.15863/TAS)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 13.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Vadim Andreevich Kozhevnikov**

Peter the Great St.Petersburg Polytechnic University  
Senior Lecturer

[vadim.kozhevnikov@gmail.com](mailto:vadim.kozhevnikov@gmail.com)

**Nikita Mihailovich Slupko**

Peter the Great St.Petersburg Polytechnic University  
student

[nislupko@gmail.com](mailto:nislupko@gmail.com)

**Anatoliy Vasilievich Sergeev**

Peter the Great St.Petersburg Polytechnic University  
Assistant Professor

[sergeev\\_av@spbstu.ru](mailto:sergeev_av@spbstu.ru)

## DESIGN AND DEVELOPMENT OF PERSONAL FINANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

**Abstract:** This work is dedicated to engineering and implementation of application for personal finance management. It describes existing market solutions and analyses their useful functionality and limitations. Taking this into account we determine functionality of new application and its features that shows product as competitive solution. Then article describes choice of developer tools and analyzing final application.

**Key words:** personal finance system, web-development.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Kozhevnikov, V. A., Slupko, N. M., & Sergeev, A. V. (2019). Design and development of personal finance management system. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 110-115.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-8> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.8>

### Introduction

Today, more than ever, the issue of rational management and distribution of resources of different kinds is one of the most important. This question arises at different levels - from the management of personal time among schoolchildren to the financial planning of campaigns with billions of authorized capitals. The amount of available information consumed and created goods in the world is constantly growing, but at the same time the complexity of control over them is also growing rapidly.

The idea of competent management of personal finances is not our contemporary at all. It appeared along with the monetary system thousands of years ago and was based on simple basic human needs [1]. Planning your income and expenses allows you not only to get useful predictions, but also to change your own habits: to give up excesses or, on the contrary, to

start investing finances in relevant areas - education, health, family.

For thousands of years people have been counting on paper with pencil. At the turn of the XX and XXI centuries there was an important revolution. Computers have tightly entered our home world and brought new opportunities. Modern systems do not allow us to do anything fundamentally new, but now the construction of graphs and reports has become truly accessible to people. The mobility of the systems allows you to enter the purchase data directly in the store via a mobile application or smartphone browser.

Simplicity, accessibility, elegance, practical benefits, flexibility and mobility have popularized the idea of managing personal finances. Today, hundreds of such applications have millions of downloads in mobile stores and application sites have millions of visits per day.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

The application market today is quite large, although inertial - most popular applications have been created for a very long time. This is manifested in the use of outdated technologies, the old inflexible interface and other equally important features. All these reasons create the need for thorough market research, identifying important features and creating a new generation application.

### The purpose of the article

We want to study the existing market offers, to identify their advantages and disadvantages. On this basis, it is necessary to design and implement an application that can become a competitive product in the market. The application should be focused on a wide range of users and solve their financial accounting problems effectively.

### Market research

To determine the current state of the application market in chosen area, we used two review articles with a list of existing solutions [2][3]. Of these, we chose the 4 most popular and large applications with a web version. These services are "Drebedengi" (> 220 000 users), Home Money (> 250 000 users), EasyFinance (> 350 000 users), Cash Organizer (> 100 000 users) [4][5][6][7].

As a result of the solutions analysis, the advantages and basic functionality required by the user were identified. These include the ability to add records of spending and income, create various accounts, the ability to view your statistics, create savings targets, create categories of spending. Benefits include multilingual, multi-user mode, intuitive design and the use of modern standards.

The serious shortcomings of existing applications include the partial lack of the above described functionality, the garbage interface, the use of the old technology stack and methods (Flash Player, tabular markup, and others), the inconvenient multi-user mode or the lack of it, the support of a single language, poor user experience.

### Platform

There are three global different platforms for creating an application - a classic application for a personal computer (Windows or Unix-based OS), a web application and a mobile application.

Priority features of the designed application are:

- Accessibility for the user from several devices for convenient instant spending of expenses;
- Availability of service at any point where there is access to the Internet.

Writing a desktop version of an application limits application mobility and, obviously, does not solve our needs.

Mobile applications are a good modern version of the application. Today, most of the traffic is consumed through mobile devices, and mobile applications most conveniently convey the necessary

content to the consumer [8]. However, there is a cross-platform problem - to properly reach an audience, it is necessary to write at least two applications for IOS and Android. In addition, the development of a single mobile application makes it impossible for the end user to use the application from a personal computer.

Finally, there is a universal solution in the form of a modern web application. The advantages of this option stem from the disadvantages of the above alternatives:

- cross-platform in nature, it is enough to write the application once and it will be available from any device with a browser;
- undemanding of resources - the application does not require installation;
- mobility, providing access to the service wherever there is a mobile Internet;
- indicators of speed and cost of development are also very good, because we need to write only one application instead of several for each platform.

Thus, the web application is the ideal solution in chosen area.

### Architecture

It is important for us not only to transfer calculations from the client, but also to store a large amount of user data. At the same time, we can optimize the number of requests to the server by adding light scripts that serve the user and access the server only at the moment of real need. Using asynchronous interaction mechanisms, we will achieve optimal performance and a better experience for the user.

Thus, classical n-tier architecture is suitable for us. It consists of three components:

- a client that serves as an entry point for a user, displays data and generates queries;
- a server that receives requests, processes data, stores and withdraws them from the database, and generates and sends a response to the client;
- a database storing all user data and metadata.

### Server

We will be defined with requirements to our server. Our application does not imply any complex calculations. The main priority is the fast processing of requests from the client. The initial application project should be designed to handle a large number of simultaneous requests - the vast majority of them will come to add and retrieve records from the database.

The server could be implemented with C-like language - C# or Java, but developing with them takes multiple times more than in other languages. It is worthwhile to use these productive, but heavy tools when writing a server of an extremely high-loaded application that performs complex data processing.



## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

The classic server language for a long time was PHP. With the release of new versions, many problems were fixed in it, because of which this language was scolded by the community. However, this language still encourages the use of bad practices and crutches, and innovations are created more to facilitate the lives of programmers who support PHP projects than to attract the attention of new projects. Today, the share of new projects that use PHP is inexorably decreasing. Choosing a tool for a new project, we are forced to focus on its prospects and trends and improvements.

One of the most promising languages today is NodeJS [9]. This is a great tool to handle a large number of asynchronous requests and simple operations on the server. The Node API is written in C ++, which provides high performance. Node is simple and transparent to use, its syntax is almost identical to JavaScript, which will be written frontend, which allows the developer to easily move from server development to client development and back. Node has an excellent package manager with a huge number of user libraries to install. Re-use of a quality code, approved and tested by thousands of developers, allows you to abstract from details and focus on important aspects - architecture, useful functionality, application ideology.

Node works fine in conjunction with the Express framework and any settings on it, for example, loopback [10]. The framework provides a flexible and easily customizable API, simplifies writing handlers, and communicates with databases. All this allows you to write high-quality and productive code with minimal time, labor and financial costs. Express is the most popular NodeJS server solution. This niche he occupied not by chance - the framework is easy and fast, while there are no compatibility issues with other packages.

NodeJS and Express are the ideal tool for developing an application based on the criteria specified. What is also important, the Node community is very active, there is good documentation on this technology and a lot of educational and auxiliary literature both on the basic basics of the language, and the design patterns and good practice when developing. By virtue of the above advantages, we will use Node as a back-end development technology.

### Client

We will use HTML5 as our markup language. It is modern standard that has no serious competitors.

For CSS, you can use the SASS or SCSS preprocessors. Reducing the time to write your own styles allows you to focus on the design of the interface, rather than its implementation. We try to use the OOP approach as often as possible to manage abstractions, rather than specific implementations, so using the CSS Modules pattern will be an excellent practice for separating code into structural and stylistic components.

To design an application, it is advisable to use one of the popular MVC frameworks for front-end development. Today on the market we see three such tools: Angular, React and Vue.

We will use React as a flexible and extremely productive library. Moreover, we are working with the advanced technology React Hooks, which will make our code easy, simple and productive.

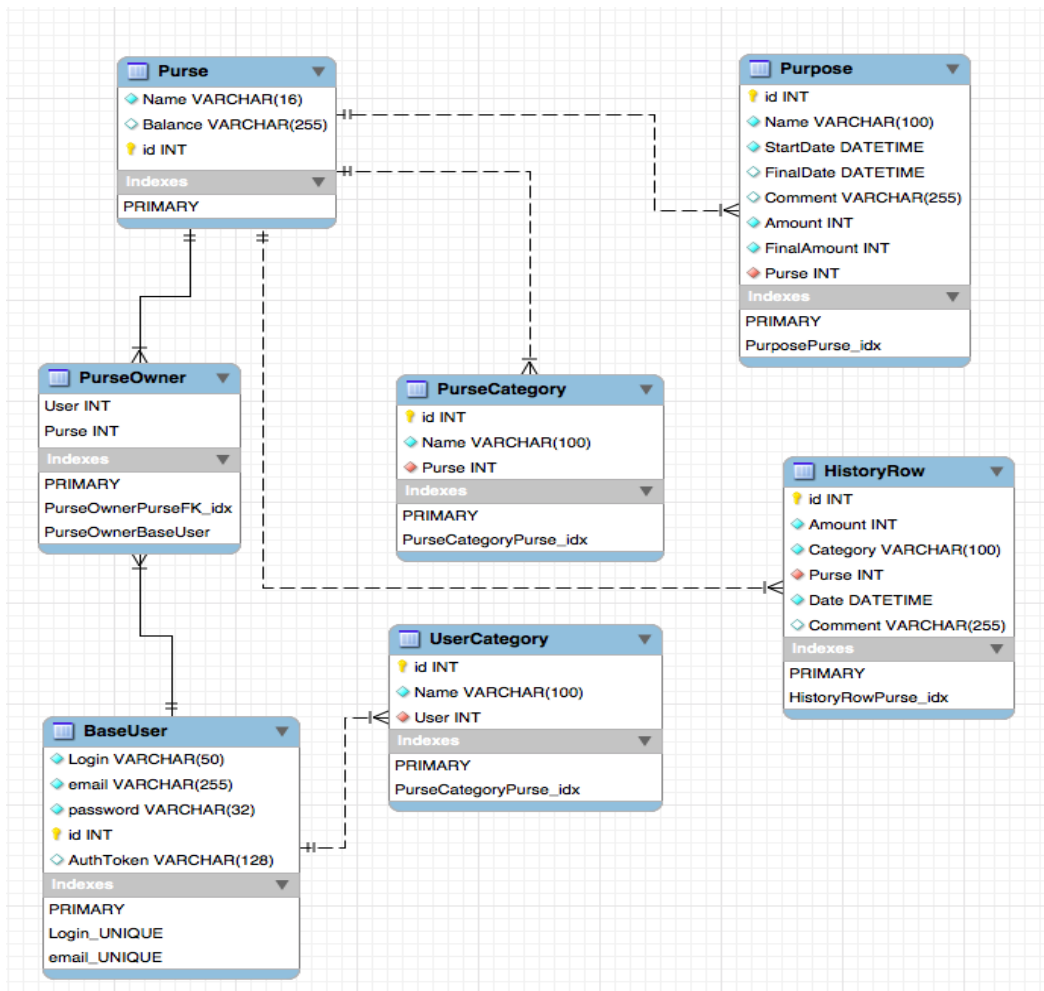
Let's talk about the popular bundle React + Redux. Redux allows you to store all data in one place and access the store as a single point; data is not stored in components locally. However, Redux has a number of drawbacks, which in our case collectively outweigh the benefits. First of all, this is a significant increase in the amount of code, the complexity of which grows with each new line. In the conditions of a team of one person and tight deadlines, it is necessary to observe and balance the performance and speed of development. Further, Re-dux, being the only monolithic repository, risks storing up-to-date irrelevant data. At the same time, we don't need to store "undo" states, which is another argument against using Redux. As an alternative, we will use several contexts that are connected to the components using the use Conext Hook.

### Data Base

Today, there are two main directions in the way information is presented and stored in databases - relational (SQL) and non-relational (NoSQL). Their selection is determined by the requirements provided in the data. In the case of relational databases, this is so-called ACID - Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, Durability. The choice of non-relational bases is determined by the requirements for flexibility, scalability and speed of access to data. The data can be stored without visible logical connections, as it always happens with the data in the SQL solution, where the base schema is represented by entities and relationships between them. When choosing a solution for your project, you need to understand the absence of a panacea - there is no perfect solution, you always have to sacrifice either stability or speed in one form or another.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350



**Figure 1 - Physical database scheme**

For us, the first priority is the consistency and reliability of the data obtained. Speed, which increases by a fraction of a second, is not so critical for us, as in multimedia applications of high load. Scaling up an application is not so often the case; it will be fairly easy to do with its initial size — in the case of a relational solution, we will need about a dozen entities.

As a relational management system, we will choose MySQL as the most popular solution at the moment.

Based on the functionality of the application, we create a database schema. It consists of 7 tables. This model will be implemented with Loopback technology - Juggler. All data scheme is described is JSON-file and is used on server as global data model.

Every entity will have own API methods. Juggler use this json model to create physical model and exploit it later. You could see this scheme above (Fig. 1).

### Application

After implementation we have to cover our project by functional tests. Main user scenario should test all features of application, such as registration, authorizing, searching history, adding new money account, adding new category, adding people to managing this account in cooperate, adding new financial purpose, analyzing statistics of chosen account. Here are some figures representing these steps (Fig. 2-4).

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHC (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

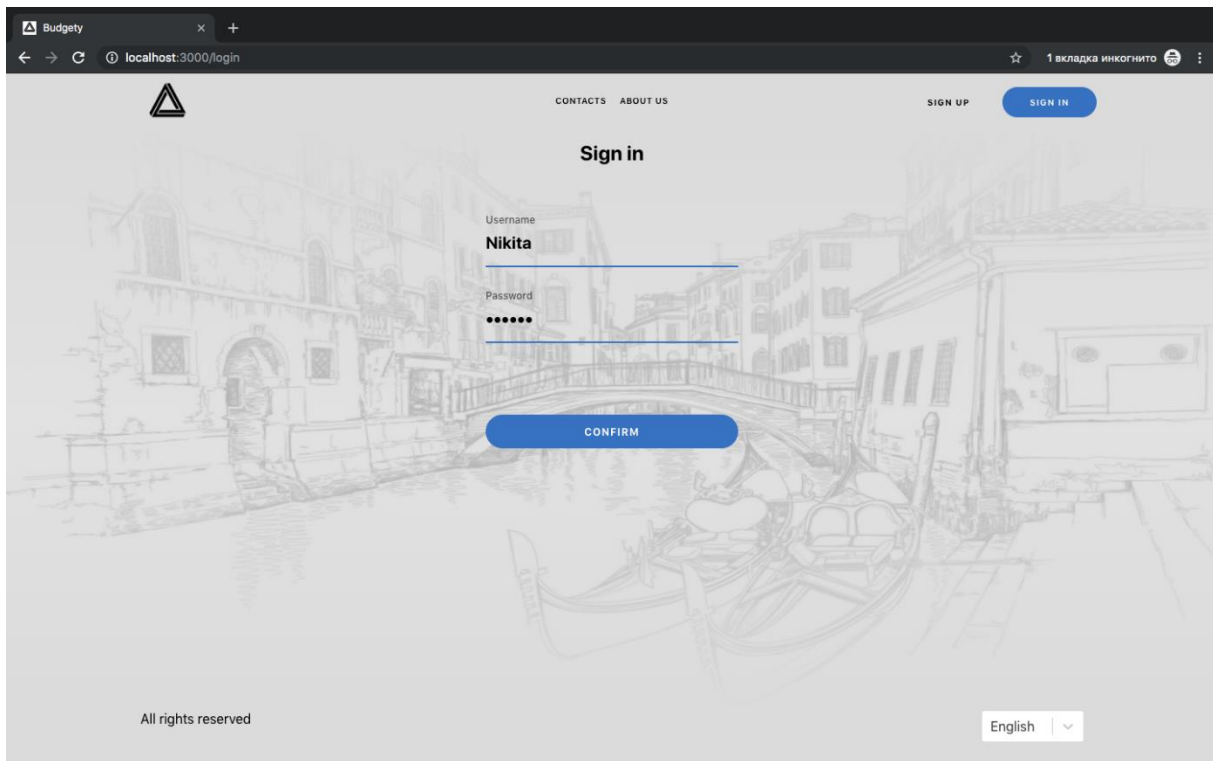


Figure 2 - Authorization Page

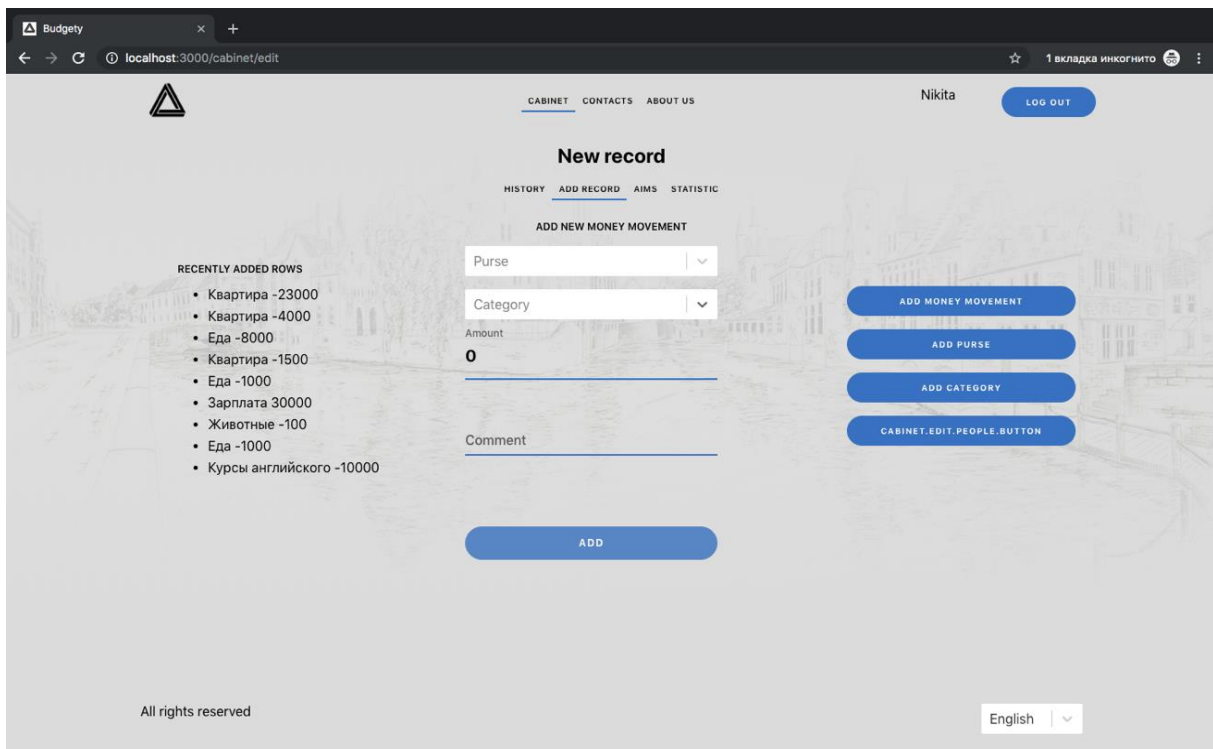


Figure 3 - Adding new record of incoming finance

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

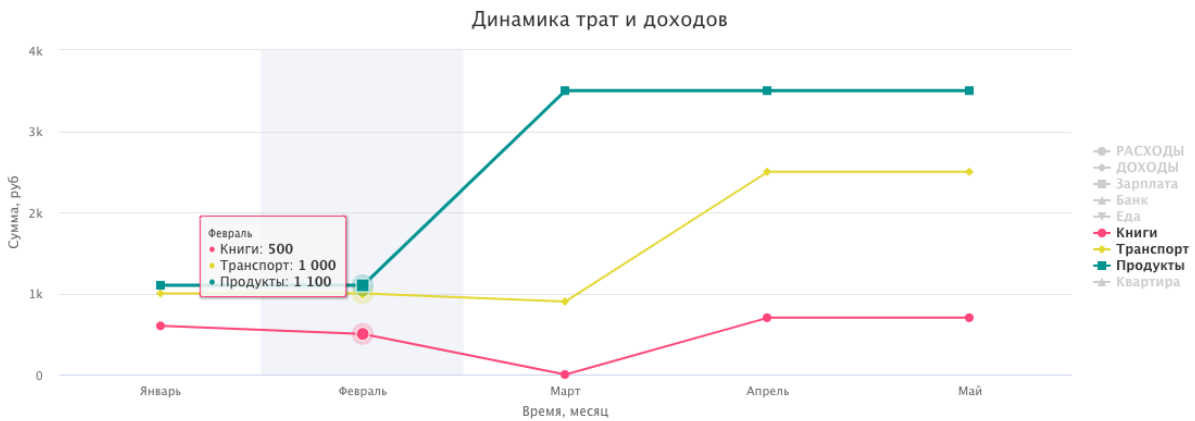


Figure 4 - Fragment of statistic page

### Conclusion

The developed application meets all the requirements [11]. It is ergonomic, easy and satisfies the basic needs of the consumer. Moreover, it is not

inferior to competitors in the market and even surpasses some of them in functionality. Conclusions about the choice of tools can be used when designing similar applications.

### References:

1. Frolova, T. A. (2007). *Finansy i credit: conspect lekcij*. Taganrog: TTI UFU. Retrieved April 12, 2019, from <http://www.aup.ru/books/m171>
2. (n.d.). Lihacker. Article «9 samyh udobnyh programm dlya vedeniya semejnogo byudzhet». Retrieved April 14, 2019, from <https://liferacker.ru/family-budget/>
3. (n.d.). Startpack. Retrieved April 14, 2019, from <https://startpack.ru/category/personal-finance>
4. (n.d.). Drebedengi. Retrieved April 15, 2019, from <https://www.drebedengi.ru/>
5. (n.d.). HomeMoney. Retrieved April 15, 2019, from <https://homemoney.ua/app/>
6. (n.d.). EasyFinance. Retrieved April 15, 2019, from <https://easyfinance.ru/>
7. (2019). CashOrganizer. Retrieved April 15, 2019, from <https://www.cashorganizer.com/rus/>
8. (n.d.). Web-canape. Article «Internet 2017–2018 v mire i v Rossii: statistika i trendy». Retrieved April 16, 2019, from <https://www.web-canape.ru/business/internet-2017-2018-v-mire-i-v-rossii-statistika-i-trendy/>
9. (n.d.). Official NodeJS documentation. Retrieved April 16, 2019, from <https://js-node.ru/>
10. (n.d.). Official Loopback documentation. Retrieved April 17, 2019, from <https://loopback.io>
11. (n.d.). GitHub repo of project. Retrieved June 3, 2019, from <https://github.com/Nislupko/budgety/>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Bibish Muhsinovna Jurayeva  
Bukhara State University  
Teacher

## LINGUACOGNITIVE PECULIARITIES OF UZBEK NATIONAL PROVERBS FORMED ON THE BASE OF LEXICAL SEMANTIC GROUP OF “BIRD”

**Abstract:** In this article is discussed about Uzbek national proverbs based on lexical semantic group of “bird”.

**Key words:** Proverb, the basis of formation of proverbs, bird, social conditional meaning.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Jurayeva, B. M. (2019). Linguacognitive peculiarities of Uzbek national proverbs formed on the base of lexical semantic group of “bird”. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 116-119.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-9> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.9>

### Introduction

The issue of linguistic examination of the zoonists, beginning with Mahmud Koshgariy’s “Devonu lugotut turk” has not dropped from agenda of Uzbek linguistics so far. It has been implemented many works on researching zoonym components proverbs [4, 121]. It was defined the frequency of lingua cultural use of 23 zoonym component proverbs in Lafta Adnan Habib’s dissertation. 13 of them are high frequency, and 6 of them middle frequency and 4 of them low frequency [6]. Omer Bircher analyzed semantic and Lingua cultural side of zoonym component proverbs and sayings in Russian and Turkish languages and opened semantic features of zoonyms such as wolf, fox, dog, horse, pig, crow, camel, donkey in proverbs [1]. In research work conducted under the leadership of Sh. Mazhitayeva is an investigated linguistic structure, ethnic and lingua cultural feature of zoonym component proverbs of English and Kazakh languages on the base of comparative, statistic and component analyzing methods. As high frequency usage zoomorphism it is shown zoonyms *dog*, *horse*, and *ox* [6]. Learning the national-cultural features of zoonym component proverbs of Russian and English B. Boktayeva confirmed with samples that zoonyms of each language is depend on living condition, life style and mental features of that nation [2, 39]. O.A.Dmitriyeva learned lingua cultural features of proverbs and aphorisms on the basis of Russian and French materials. In the dissertation is analyzed 6000 extracts of literary texts [3].

### Materials and Methods

Researches show that there is social conditioned additional meaning of daily using items, events, peculiar features and signs of social members. As well as the names of animals for being wide –spread and especially for being connected with the life of people on their meaning structure are also distinguished additional semes. Paramas connected with the names of animals play a great role in the structure of Uzbek National proverbs. The main reason of this is that people from ancient times fed cows, sheep, donkeys, goats as domestic animals and they used them for their needs and for their aims.

Bird belongs to vertebrates with feathers, two wings, beak (a hard-pointed mouth) and capable for flying [8, 628]. In Uzbek national proverbs Lexical Semantic Group of “birds” consist of eagle, sparrow, hen(cock, chick), stork, crow, goose, quail, swan, falcon, duck, nightingale, owl, hawk, crane, goldfinch, turtle-dove, pigeon, brown owl and others and their metaphorical meanings are appeared with the following ways:

1. According to the view: “thin legs”, “long legs”, “little body” and others:

*Tovuq tanasiga qarab yayraydi, oyog’iga qarab yig’laydi.* (Meaning: Looking at its body hen enjoys, but looking at its legs it cries). *Laylakning oyog’i o’ziga qisqa.* (Meaning: Stork’s legs are short for itself). *Chumchuq semirib botmon bo’lmas, tasha o’sib ketmon bo’lmas.* (Meaning: Being fat sparrow won’t be heavy; growing hand hoe won’t be broad bladed hoe).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHQ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667  
ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

2. According to the sound: “prolonged voice”, “cackling voice”. *Turnadan qorovul qo'ysang, boshingdan qiyqiruv ketmas.* (Meaning: If crane is guard, the noise doesn't leave you). *Joyi o'z gargan tovuq ko'p qaqillar.* (Meaning: If hen's place is changed, it cackles much). *Tuxum tug'mas tovuq ko'p qaqillar.* (Meaning: The hen which doesn't lay egg cackles much).

3. According to food: “feed scrabbling for different dung and garbage”, “feed with grain”. *Podshong qarg'a bo'lsa, yemishig go'ng bo'lar.* (Meaning: If your king is crow, your eating will be dung). *Tovug'im somon sochar o'z aybini o'zi ochar.* (Meaning: Pouring cut straw my hen opens its fault). *So'qir tovuqqa hammasi tariq.* (Meaning: For blind hen everything is millet). *Jo'jali tovuqdan don ortmas.* (Meaning: It is not exceeded the grain from hen with chicks). *Arpa qayerda pishsa, chumchuq o'sha yerda.* (Meaning: Where ripe barley and there is a sparrow). *Tariqni yegan chumchuq, baloga qolgan bedana.* (Meaning: Sparrow eats millet, but quail is in trouble).

4. According to the life style: “crowing in the morning”, “scrabbling for the dung”. *Xo'roz tongda chaqirar.* (Meaning: Cock crows in dawn). *Tovuq go'ng titmasa boshi og'riydi.* (Meaning: If he doesn't scrabble for dung, it feels headache).

Observing shows that the proverbs based on lexical semantic group of “birds” are appeared according to their food. The birds of our country are divided into four groups according to change or not to change their place during the seasons of the year:

1. Settled birds-living in the same place the whole year (titmouse, turtle-dove, blue pigeon, partridge, lark, pheasant, sparrow, and others);

2. Nomadic birds- depending on the seasons of the year change their place being small flock (crow, rook, jackdaw, ouzel and others);

3. Flyby birds- land in order to have a rest and feed when flying over (crane, swan);

4. Leaving birds- when it is cold they leave temperate climate and fly to hot countries (swallow, nightingale, oriole, stork, duck, goose); [17,189-190].

According to the researches, it is known that the birds belong to four groups mentioned above are also given in Uzbek national proverbs. For instance: *titmouse, sparrow, crow, ouzel, crane, swan, eagle, duck, goose* and others. Firstly, the birds used in Uzbek national proverbs can be divided into two groups:

1. The name of domestic birds: *hen, rooster, goose, duck, turkey* and etc.

2. The name of wild birds: *eagle, crow, quail, sparrow, kite, hawk* and etc.

In Uzbek national proverbs lexical- semantic group of “birds” are expressed by three features: positive, moderate and negative characters. In Uzbek national proverbs lexical- semantic group of birds as factor marked on positive character are expressed on the following semes:

**The seme of “modesty”:** *Burgut chivin tutmas.* (Meaning: Eagle doesn't catch mosquito.)

In Uzbek language eagle is considered the symbol of pride, grandiloquence; fly is the symbol of dirtiness and pest. The person who is proud-spirited, knowing his place in life he doesn't equalize himself with anyone and doesn't humiliate his authority.

**The seme of “dream and desire”:** *Qanoti sinig musicha ham baland uya orzusida.* (Meaning: A turtle-dove with the broken wings also dreams of having high nest.)

In spite of living in any condition human wishes for better life and he strives for living abundantly.

**The seme of “thrifty”:** *O'rdak yesang, g'oz boyla.* (Meaning: If you want to eat duck, bind a goose).

Geese are larger than ducks [7, 205]. People who are skillful and knowledgeable always should do their efforts thinking the next day and they don't spend all income but they waste a part of it. In this case they can live in abundance.

**The seme of “estimating, value”:** *Gul qadrini bulbul bilar.* (Meaning: The value of flower knows nightingale).

It means that only who knows and understand that can estimate and know the value of it.

**The seme of “compatibility”:**

*To'zigan g'ozni qarg'a olar, Ikki tuyg'un yoprilsa-g'ozning sho'ri.*

(Meaning: Crow can get alone goose, if two hawks are together it is bad luck for goose). It means that if you act compatibly you can achieve your goal easily.

**The seme of “patience”:** *Qush qo'nmasdan ucholmas.* (Meaning: A bird cannot fly without landing.) During our life we encounter some dissatisfaction, some difficulties, but we shouldn't lose our head and should be patient. As Uzbek people say: “If fifteen days of month are dark, the rest fifteen will be light” or “After bad days it follows good days”.

**The seme of “kindness”:** *Qush nima topsa bolasining og'ziga tiqar.* (Meaning: Whatever a bird finds thrusts it into its chick's mouth. The proverb is about parents who devoted their life to their children.

In Uzbek national proverbs lexical- semantic group of birds as factor marked on moderate character are expressed on the following semes:

**“Erring” seme:** *Kishi yanglishib qo'lga tushar, qush yanglishib – to'rga.* (Meaning: Making mistakes ones get into trouble, if bird makes mistake, find itself into net). As a bird falls into net because of its greedy, human also making mistakes loses his way, even sometimes it may finish with dyeing.)

**“Connection” seme:** *Qush uyasida ko'rganini qiladi.* (Meaning: Bird does what it sees in its nest). It means that children's growing and forming their character is depend first of all on their educating, behavior of their parents, to be example for their

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667  
ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

children, having positive and negative influence of parents.

**“Failure” seme:** *Jo'janing iqboli bo'lsa, tovuqning emchagi bo'lar edi.* (Meaning: If chick were lucky, hen would nurse to breast – feed). This proverb is used according to people who are unlucky in life and who is failure in hunting.

**“Hopeless” seme:** *Tovuqning uchgani tomgacha.* (Meaning: Hen can fly till roof). It is said in order to show to be limiting of one's opportunity and power or in order to humiliate one's opportunity and disregard them.

In Uzbek national proverbs lexical-semantic group of birds as factor marked on positive character are expressed on the following semes:

**“Sluggishness” seme:** *Qo'lga o'rgangan qush qirda adashar.* (Meaning: Domestic birds lose its way in uplands). Parents always take care of their children until they become an adult. That's why sometimes it is difficult for them to undergo hardships of life and deal with the difficult situation.

**“Urgency” seme:** *Shoshgan o'rdak ham boshi bilan sho'ng'iydi, ham dumi bilan.* (Meaning: Hurried duck dives with both head and tail). It is known that ducks dives where it is shallow and gets mud from the bottom of the water and sifts it through its beak. With this way it separates little creatures and plants from mud and feeds with them [7, 205]. But moving with urgency duck dives sometimes with both head and tail and it cannot stuffed itself. When people do something in hurry they also lose their way. In metaphorical meaning this proverb is used according to the bustling people.

**“Disrespectful” seme:** *It qutursa egasini qopar, chumchuq qutursa burgutga chopar.* (Meaning: If dog rages, it bites its owner, if sparrow rages, it runs to eagle.) When people run into trouble it is often for their behavior. Because they struggle with the people who are stronger physically and financially than themselves and they become the victim of their bad behavior.

**“Talkative” seme:** *Qora tovuq qaqqillaydi, oq tovuq shaqillaydi.* (Meaning: Black hen cackles, a white hen makes a clanging). This proverb is about people who are talkative and talk without queue.

**“Vainglory” seme:** *Eshak maqtanib tulpor bo'lmas, qarg'a maqtanib shunqor bo'lmas.* (Meaning: Boasting itself donkey wouldn't be horse, boasting itself crow would never be eagle). It is about the people who talk about their abilities, achievements or possessions in a way that sounds too proud. It means that however boastful people try to show themselves they never manage to be a real person.

**“Pettiness” seme:** *Podshong qarg'a bo'lsa, yeganing go'ng bo'lar.* (Meaning: If your king is crow, you have to eat dung). If the leader cares too much about something is not really important and the

members also have been involved in this way of working.

**“Unskillful manner” seme:** *Qarg'aning hunari bo'lsa, tezak yemasdi.* (Meaning: If a crow is skilled it doesn't eat dung). Proverb is used as metaphor towards the people not having enough education, training or experience to do a job that needs skill.

**“Greediness” seme:** *Qush ham o'z nafsidan ilinar.* (Meaning: Bird is also caught for its greediness). *G'ozning o'zi cho'lda, ko'zi ko'lda.* (Meaning: Goose is in desert, but its eyes are in lake). It is used according to greedy people and for being greedy they may face to different troubles.

**“Impatience” seme:** *Bedananing ini yo'q, qayga borsa bitbildiq.* (Meaning: Quail hasn't got a nest, it warbles wherever it goes). This proverb is used about people who are carelessness, lighthearted and about the people who are not able to live the same place for a long time and unresponsive people.

**“Squeamishness” seme:** *Qarg'ani boqqan bilan qush bo'lmas.* (Meaning: Crow will not be bird even you take it into care). It means that however you treat the evil deed with kindness he never turns into good behavior person.

**“Disrespectfulness” seme:** *Go'ngqarg'a bo'lib ming yil yashagandan, sher bo'lib bir yil yashagan afzal.* (Meaning: Living a year as a lion is better than living thousand years as a crow). Crow is winter bird and moves everywhere, and it feeds scrabbling for dung. But lion lives in the same place and it is the king of all animals. This proverb is about person who lives on an account of somebody, toady and two-faced people who treat somebody more important with special kindness or respect in order to gain their favor or help. With this proverb it is said that instead of toadying and being two-faced it would be better to live gaining respect because of their good qualities or achievements.

**“Slow-witted” seme:** *Ko'r tovuqqa har narsa don ko'rinar.* (Meaning: For blind hen all seems grain). It is referred to person whose viewpoint or way of thinking is narrow and that's why such kind of people think and make up their mind according to their worldview.

**“Unvalued” seme”**

*Zimiston ko'rmagan bulbul,  
Guliston qadrini bilmas.  
Ko'lda yurgan go'ng'ir g'oz,  
Cho'l qadrini na bilsin.  
Cho'lda yurgan tuvaloq,  
Ko'l qadrini na bilsin.*

(Meaning: Not having seen the darkness, nightingale doesn't know the value of prospering. Swimming on the lake, brown goose doesn't know the value of desert. Having lived in desert, bustard doesn't know the value of lake). In this proverb it is said that the people who haven't seen bad days, haven't faced to bad behavior people, or haven't run

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

into serious troubles, they never estimate the value of happy days.

**“Unfriendliness” seme:** *To'zigan g'ozni qarg'alar.* (Meaning: Crowded crowns can catch alone goose). It is easy to defeat people who cannot live friendly by people who act densely.

**“Concernment” seme:** *Qush donga yig'lar, chivin –shiraga.* (Meaning: Bird cries for grain, mosquito cries for sap (sweet). *Qush tuzoqqa don uchun kelar.* (Meaning: Bird comes to trap for grain). *Och tovuq omborga yugurar.* (Meaning: Hungry bird runs to pantry). It is used as metaphor according to people who dominate their benefit than others and try only for themselves.

**“Negligibility” seme:** *Usta ovchi chumchuqqa o'q otmas.* (Meaning: Skilled hunter doesn't shoot sparrow). Skilled and knowledgeable man is never waste the time for nonsense, on the contrary they strive to achieve their goal. There is social conditional additional meaning of things, events that we used widely in our dairy life. As well as, the names of birds

separate additional seme in their meaning construction for being wide spread and especially for being connected with the life of people. The names of birds such as, *nightingale, sparrow, goose, crown, hen, duck, eagle, chick* have additional meaning but on the name of birds that can be met rarely such as *turkey, oriole* are not realized such meanings.

## Conclusion

In Uzbek national proverbs lexical- semantic group of birds as factor marked on positive character present seven semes: “modesty”, “dream”, “thrifty”, “estimating”, “compatibility”, “patience”, “kindness”, as moderate character present four semes: “erring”, “connection”, “failure”, “hopeless” and as negative character present sixteen semes: “sluggishness”, “urgency”, “disrespectful”, “talkative”, “vainglory”, “pettiness”, “unskillful manner”, “greediness”, “impatience”, “squeamishness”, “disrespectfulness”, “slow witted”, “unvalued”, “unfriendliness”, “concernment”, “negligibility”.

## References:

1. Bicher, O. (2014). Proverbs and sayings with zoonym components in the system of language and knowing lingua regional geography. *Universum: Philology and art history: e-scientific journal – Moscow: publisher «MLIHO», № 6 (8), pp.1–11.*
2. Boktayeva, V. L. (2016). Proverbs and sayings with zoonym components and their national-cultural specificity in Russian and English languages. *Messenger of Kalmyk University, №1(29).*
3. Dmitriyeva, O. A. (1997). *Cultural-lingual characteristics of proverbs and sayings* (French and Russian materials): dissertation. (p.186). Volgograd.
4. Kindrya, N. A. (2005). *English and Russian phraseology with zoonym components in the world of history of culture.* dissertation of philological science. (p.203). Moscow.
5. Kurajava, I. V. (2007). *Name of animals as reflection of world's valuable pictures in English lingua culture.* dissertation of philological science. (p.167). Ivanovo.
6. Lafta Adnan Habib (2012). *Russian proverbs with the name of animals in linguacultural aspect.* dissertation of philological science. (p.19). Voronej.
7. Mavlonov, O. (2005). Zoology. The 7 - grade textbook . (p.180). Tashkent.
8. (1981). Uzbek language explanatory dictionary. The 2<sup>nd</sup> volume S-H-Moscow: Russian, p.715.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



**Rano Rakhmatulloevna Kasimova**  
Bukhara State University  
PhD in philological sciences,  
Department of English Literature  
[ranokasimova77@mail.ru](mailto:ranokasimova77@mail.ru)

**Akmal Raupovich Ziyadullayev**  
Bukhara Regional Centre for Retraining Public School  
Teachers  
an English Language Teacher Trainer,  
Methodology of Teaching Languages Department  
[ziyodullayevakmal@mail.ru](mailto:ziyodullayevakmal@mail.ru)

**Aziza Akmalovna Ziyadullayeva**  
Bukhara State University  
a student of Foreign Languages Faculty

## COMPARISON OF CEREMONIES AND LEGENDS ASSOCIATED WITH THE BELIEF IN REVERENCE FOR WATER

**Abstract:** *Cult water and reverence for water of the nation become a basis of legends and ceremonies. One of the wide-spread ceremonies is called Rain calling. This ceremony is usually held when people felt need of rain for the crop. A rain fertility ceremony drums and dance of Venda people in South Africa, the Tradition of Cat Procession, the Rocket Festival and the Phi Ta Khon Festival show the same motif and purpose. Rain calling and rituals of it may differ in accordance with the geographical location.*

*This article, initially, describes and focuses on the ceremonies that have been celebrated by the Uzbeks, Venda people, Thai people, and others. The ritual and songs performed in them will also be referred. Views of the scientists and ethnographers worked on this subject will be evaluated. Later on, classification of the functions of water depicted in the legends of folklore works and their traces in modern literature will be analyzed as well.*

**Key words:** *folklore, legends, modern literature.*

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Kasimova, R. R., Ziyadullayev, A. R., & Ziyadullayeva, A. A. (2019). Comparison of ceremonies and legends associated with the belief in reverence for water. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 120-124.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-10> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.10>

### Introduction

The ceremony of *Rain Calling* has been celebrated by our nation since old times. It is one of the ceremonies of spring and it is so-called because it was marked only in a certain season – when it was drought in spring, that's why it is included in the seasonal ceremonies. The Rain Calling ceremony, which shows the reverence for water, was held before beginning the work in the field by peasants. This ceremony exists among lots of nations. Though it differs from one another in every nation all of them are bound on a single purpose, as Marilyn Petersen<sup>1</sup> writes in her book "A Treasury of Uzbek Legends and Lore": "It is all based on the same theme, the need of

and reverence for water (Petersen 2000, 140). It was held while our ancestors were in need of rain and when the harvest was damaged. According to archeologists, the origin of this ceremony dates back as far as the neolithic period and the Bronze Age. Because in the past people held this ceremony by the means of stone *jada*. It was the first appearance of Rain Calling and as the other model of it there appeared the ceremony of *Sust xotin*.

### Materials and Methods

The famous Uzbek folklorist B. Sarimsakov informing about the ceremony of Rain Calling, gave the fact that its history was ancient and it's called

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

variously in different places, for instance, in Bukhara, in the districts of Karakul and Olot it is called as *Chala xotin* [premature woman], among turkmens as *Suyut xotin*, among tajiks as *Sust momo* or *Ashaglen* (see Sarimsakov 1986, 65).

In the book of Marilyn Petersen is said:

The Balkan people of Eastern Europe had a ceremony called Peperuda [butterfly]. Girls would gather together and one of them would be chosen to represent Peperuda. She was decorated with green leaves and branches. The girls would sing songs around the butterfly as they would go from one house to the next asking God to give them rain. When they would stop at a house, the host would entertain them with sweets and water. In Serbia they had somewhat the same celebration, but the girls surrounding the butterfly would visit the cemetery and ask for support from their ancient ancestors. As they did this, they would pour water on the graves (Petersen 2000, 140).

The extract shows that the ceremony of rain calling has been spread among Eastern European Balkan people and Siberians, whereas the latter information indicates that the same ceremony is held in different regions of Germany, the Caucasus, Central Europe, among the nations of Africa, Asia, and Australia, and Tibet:

In different regions of Germany, boys would be dressed as a water bird. Sometimes the boys would make the water bird out of branches and leaves from a **marsh**. Then they would carry it out into the streets. The boy who carried the bird would be treated with water. In the Caucasus they would pour water on a man who was made up in the image of the God of rain. They would go from one house to the next singing songs, and were given gifts of food. In Central Europe girls would pull plows through water against the current, or build a dam on a dry river bed. Among the nations of Africa, Asia, and Australia the people would pour water into a stone, or sink the stone in the water. In Tibet the ceremony of calling water was presided over by a Shaman, who would read from a secret book and sprinkle water on a mirror, and the women would walk around the temple with the writings of Buddha on their backs (Petersen 2000, 140).

The ceremony of calling water differs with the local elements as entertaining the girls with sweets and water; pouring water on the graves of the ancestors; treating the boy who carried the bird with water; pour water on a man who was made up in the image of the God of rain; pull plows through water against the current, or build a dam on a dry river bed; pour water into a stone, or sink the stone in the water; ceremony presided over by a Shaman, who would read from a secret book and sprinkle water on a mirror, and the women would walk around the temple and etc. The main participants are girls (Eastern European Balkan

people and Siberians, Central Europe), boys (Germany, the Caucasus), and in some parts both women and men (Africa, Asia, Australia, Tibet) throughout the world. There is a rain fertility ceremony drums and dance of Venda people in South Africa (Zimbabwe), where the whole nation takes part. A girl is chosen as an intermediary to talk with her ancestors, who send their wish to God. The most amazing is the tradition of "Cat Procession" of Thai people. A cat in a thinly woven bamboo basket is carried in a procession to pray for rain, which makes this tradition different from other *Rain calling* ceremonies. In "Thai Tradition and Festivals", Dararai writes:

A selected beautiful female cat is put into a thinly woven bamboo basket. The colourfully dressed farmers in a village will form a procession to parade the cat around the village. When walking, they will joyfully dance and sing a song with the lyrics asking for a rainfall enough for feeding their crops. The procession will pass from one house to another. Villagers staying in their houses when hearing the approaching procession will prepare a bowl of water and then splash it on the cat while the members of the procession will express their gladness as if it were really raining and say,

"Rain is falling. Rain is falling. A lot of rainfall. Our rice fields and the grass are all green now"<sup>2</sup>.

The Uzbek ceremony *Sust xotin* is different in forms from region to region. B.Sarimsakov pointed four versions and M.Djurayev pointed six versions of the ceremony and commented on all of them. But the common side of the ceremony is that it is held by women. According to M.Petersen in Uzbekistan, it was mainly the women, who were the rain callers. In the regions of Navoi and Bukhara the rain callers made up puppets. They would go to each house singing songs.

The translation of the Uzbek poem of "Rain callers" shows the skillfulness of the author. She tried to keep both meaning and rhyme of the poem in the translation. The English translation of the poem given next to Uzbek version<sup>3</sup> helps readers to catch the meaning easily.

The ponds have all dried up,  
No fish there remain.  
Come, granny Thunder,  
We are, from thirst, in pain.  
I wanted to plant millet,  
But my color became yellowish.  
Come, Granny rain, murmuring,  
So satisfying eating fish.

The English teacher, for whom folklore has always been of special interest, decided to compile a collection of folklore translated into English and this work revealed her shadowed abilities (in prose and poetry translation). The poem below shows how she

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

skillfully translated the poem remaining ethnographisms, i.e. the words connected with mentality of Uzbek nation in the translation:

They read from the *Hadithes*  
The leaves from trees fall.  
Torn from their boughs,  
Come dear rain, come to call<sup>4</sup>.

Indeed, information and the poems about the Uzbek ceremony *Sust xotin* given by the author are true. B.Sarimsakov, a well-known scientist, wrote the same information as well. He says that at the appointed day more than ten women walk through the village carrying a doll worn with clothes of an old woman and enter every house urging the people to sing the song concerning rain. M. Petersen included in her book various names of *Sust xotin* and translated them into English. *Susthoten* is translated as the women without energy and *Suvhoten* as the women of the water. In fact, *Sust xotin* is derived from the name of one of the Gods of water *Tishtriya*, described in *Avesto*, at first it was as *Tishtriy*, *Tushtr*, *Sustr* and at last it got the name of *Sust xotin* (Sarimsakov 1986, 65).

Consequences of rain calling is explained like that:

The owners of the houses would give them wheat or sprinkle them with water. The rain callers made *Halisa* and *Halim*<sup>5</sup> from the wheat that was given to them, and distributed it among the people. The hard work of the rain callers, thirst, and the aspirations of people almost certainly would bring the rain. We admire the highest skill of our ancestors.

Legends revealing the functions of water

Water is described as means of life in the myths, legends and fairy tales typical to folklore. Even world of water is depicted as the mysterious world. In ancient times people considered water as the magic world for passing from one world into another, cleaning up one's act, devoting him eternal life. One of the ancient motifs connected with the cult of water became a basis of origin of the legend about an ascetic [saint] *Khodja Ubbon*. The so called place is located at about 40 kilometers to the south-west of Bukhara city. This place is famous for its curative water well. The cemetery of *Khodja Ubbon* is included into the monuments of an ancient culture. Information about the cemetery is observed in the travel book of A. Burnes "Travels into Bokhara" firstly. He gave some facts about the coins and ancient relics of the kings lived in olden times. It was defined that these coins belonged to the kingdoms of III-I centuries B.C (Burnes 1839, vol.II, 455-473).

Narzulla Yuldashev, who had deeply investigated the cemeteries of Bukhara saints and the history of these spots, wrote about the origin of the legend about *Khodja Ubbon* cemetery: Once upon a time there lived a king whose son caught infectious

disease leprosy. Being ashamed of their son's illness parents left him in the desert which is called *Khodja Ubbon* cemetery nowadays. The boy felt exhausted and thirst in scorching hot. Fortunately with the order of God there appeared *Khodja Ubbon* and asked the fellow the reason of his being there. King's son told a story of himself. Having heard that *Khodja Ubbon* ascended the highest hill and as soon as he stuck his javelin into the peak, there appeared a spring. *Khodja Ubbon* told the boy to drink water of that spring. The young fellow did what he had been told and soon recovered.

It is evident that water is one of the main sources for recovering from the illness. On one hand legends show the curative peculiarities of water, on the other hand the beliefs of rescuing people from disaster exist. In some facts *Khodja Ubbon* is given in the form of *Khubbi* and is used for the latter reason. Legends about *Khoresm Khubbi* indicate that the son of *Hakim* is a person who amused people with his deeds.

They say that *Hakim* had three sons; his youngest sons' name was *Khubbihodja*. Two older sons followed their father and learned religious sciences, but the last one liked to ride the horse and go hunting. Father was upset and angry with his son that he did not follow him. Later *Khubbi* started to astonish people.

Once *Khubbi's* father called him three times. After the first calling he started for the road, during the second one he was busy with rescuing suffered people. In the third call he appeared in front of his father. Father got angry with his son's deeds and forced him to leave *Khorezm*. *Khubbi* had parted with his father and disappeared.

As you see *Khubbi* was depicted as a performer of many miracles related to the sea in this legend. So we can say that *Khodja Ubbon* was created with the help of the imagination and the beliefs of people and always regarded as a mythical hero.

### Chashmai Ayub Mausoleum and Legends

One of the wells situated in Bukhara is called *Chashmai Ayub* which means spring of *Ayub*. The water of this well is also famous for its curative function. People, who know about that function come and drink water of this well with a good intention. So many versions of the legend about *Chashmai Ayub* are spread among the nation. Water is shown possessing magic power which can destroy everything that humankind has got. But the end of the legend gives information about the cure for illness.

The blessed *Ayub* had 14 children and was very wealthy. He was so rich that he didn't know the amount of his property. Being deprived of his children and wealth he was deprived of his health as well. The worms began eating his body. *Allah* had ordered worms not to eat *Ayub's* heart and tongue. Because he remembered Him with his heart and repeated His name with his tongue. All the relatives

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

turned away from Ayub even two of his wives out of three abandoned him. People made Ayub leave the city. After some period the worms began to leave one by one but while he was taking the worms and put them again in their places there came revelation not to put them back on his body, because they had already done their duty. He beat his foot on the ground from the place where he was sitting and with the power of Allah there appeared a spring. When he washed up in the water of that spring one of the worms dropped into the water and turned into a leech, and the other one went up to the mulberry tree and turned into a silk worm. The blessed Ayub regained his health.

That hill still exists and has become cemetery of Ayub. Spring water is the treatment for any wound. The people who keep the silk worm take water from this spring and pour on the worms when worms begin to weave cocoon. Old people wish the patience of Ayub to those who are in difficulty.

Another version of the legend about *Chashmai Ayub Mausoleum* is cited in the book "Bukhara. The city and the legends":

On the place of modern mausoleum, as the legend suggests, there used to be a desert. Its inhabitants had suffered from the lack of water; they had prayed to God to send them at least some water. In response to these prayers, Saint Job [Ayub] had appeared in front of poor people and hit the ground with his magic staff. Sudden appearance of a well had astonished the people by its vivifying spring and its crystal clear water. It is commonly believed that the water still keeps its clearness and herbal power (Bukhara, trans. M.Muzafarova (T.:Davri Nashriyoti,2010), 14).

So, reverence for water and beliefs connected with the cult of water have deep roots in the works of folklore. But in some works of modern literature the theme of water is also been treated. Abdulla Aripov's dramatic epic poem "Way to Paradise" (*Jannatga yo'l*) repeats the motif of water. While rescuing a girl from the disaster a fellow drowns and dies. So, water became the means of passing from transitive world to eternal one (Nizomova 2013, 93).

## Conclusion

Attempting to clarify the functions of water described in the legends of Khodja Ubbon, Spring of Ayub, in the ceremony of Rain Calling, it became obvious that water and rain have been compared to wealth from ancient times and became a basis of peculiar ceremonies and customs to be formed. Furthermore, ceremonies connected with the belief in water and belief of our ancestors to nature attracts scientists all over the world.

In general, it can be said that peoples' belief of revering for water exists not only in the works of folklore but also has its traces in the works of modern literature, which causes admiration of the treasure of Uzbek convictions about water.

## NOTES

1. Dararai, in his article "Thai Tradition and Festivals" informs that due to the climate of the north, northeast and the central regions of Thailand, which is dry in the hot and the cool seasons, ceremonies of praying for rainfall are held in these regions. Stories and legends about three such important ceremonies, the Tradition of Cat Procession, the Rocket Festival and the Phi Ta Khon Festival, are presented as well.

2. Original Uzbek version of the poem:

*Quriganmish gul hovuz  
Baliqlardan biror iz  
Guldur-momo kelsang-chi  
Tashnalab bo`ldik ojiz  
Istardim ekmak tariq,  
Ranglarim bo`ldi sariq.  
Shaldir-momo kelsang-chi  
Savobdir yemak baliq*

3. **Hadis:** (Arabic) hadith, the traditions or records of the words and deeds of the Prophet Muhammad

4. **Halim:** (Arabic) a dish made out of boiled wheat and meat. **Halisa** is another name of the traditional meal **Halim** spread in Bukhara region, which differs with the cooking process.

## References:

1. (n.d.). *Academic e-Tutor Longman Advanced American Dictionary*. Retrieved 2019, from [www.PearsonLongman](http://www.PearsonLongman)
2. (2010). *Bukhara. The city and the legends*, trans.M.Muzafarova. Tashkent: Davri Nashriyoti.
3. Burnes, A. (1839). *Travels into Bokhara, being an account of journey from India to Cabool, Tartary and Persia in the years 1831. 1832 and 1833*. London, vol.II.
4. (n.d.). Dararai, "Thai Tradition and Festivals". Retrieved 2019, from

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI</b> (Russia) = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p9muWywQLYw>

5. (2005). *Dirks William. Uzbek - English Dictionary*. Central Asian Heritage Group.
6. Juraev, M., & Saidova, R. (2002). *Bukhoro afsonalari [Legends of Bukhara]*. Tashkent: Xalq Merosi Nashriyoti.
7. (2002). *Macmillan English Dictionary*. Macmillan Publishers Limited.
8. Nizamova, S. (2013). *Zamonaviy she'riyatda suv bilan bog'liq qadimiy tushunchalar talqini* [Interpretation of ancient beliefs connected with water in modern poetry], *Filologiya masalalari*, no.6. Tashkent: Fan.
9. Petersen, M. (2000). *Treasury of Uzbek Legends and Lore*. Tashkent: Qatortol - Kamolot.
10. (n.d.). *Rain fertility ceremony drums and dance of Venda people (South Africa/Zimbabwe)*. Retrieved 2019, from <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p9muWywQLYw>
11. Sarimsakov, B. (1986). *O'zbek marosim folklori [Folklore of Uzbek ceremonies]*. Tashkent: Fan.
12. Yuldashev, N. (1997). *Buxoro avliyolarining tarixi [History of Bukhara Saints]*. Bukhara.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



SECTION 13. Geography. History. Oceanology.  
Meteorology.

Ziyodilla Izatilla o'g'li Zinatullaev  
International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan  
teacher of the Department of  
“Islamic History and Source Studies”  
Tashkent, Uzbekistan  
[ziyatullayev90@mail.ru](mailto:ziyatullayev90@mail.ru)

## ARAB CALIPHATE IN CENTRAL ASIA TO BE TAKEN COVERAGE OF THE ISSUE OF SOURCES

**Abstract:** The article highlights the Stages of Introducing Islam into Central Asia and the conquests of Movaraunnahr by the Arabs on the basis of primary sources and scientific literature.

**Key words:** conquest, truce (formal agreement), emir, Movaraunnahr, Khorasan, al-Sinj Castle, Maymurg, Buhorhudot, Qabaj Xotun, Tug'shoda, al-Hajjaj, Qutayba ibn Muslim, G'urak.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Zinatullaev, Z. I. (2019). Arab caliphate in central Asia to be taken coverage of the issue of sources. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 125-127.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-11> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.11>

### Introduction

It is known from the history that, after defeating Sassanid state, one of the largest empires of his time, The Arab Caliphate paid the main attention to the Movaraunnahr regions. The beginning of the Arab military movements in Central Asia dates back to the period of the third Caliph Osman ibn Affan [footnote:1]. In 651 year, in the time of Abdullah bin Amir bin Kurayz, the governor of Khorasan,[footnote:2] Hatim Ibn al-Nu'man al-Bakhiliy took Marv peacefully[1:59]. Only 7 farsakh from Sarahs, al-Sinj fortress between the Marvin and Mary ar-Rud roads was taken by force [1:14]. According to at-Tabari, Abdullah Ibn Amir with the governor of Marv Abraha made a formal agreement for 2 million 200 thousand or 6 million 200 thousand dirhams[footnote: 3]. Also, at that time the north part of current Afghanistan, the north-eastern part of Iran and from southern Turkmenistan to Amudarya regions, that is Khorasan [3:99], occupied by the Arabs. The center of this region was the city of Marv [4: 108]. It is the Khorasan province that served as a base stronghold for military campaigns of the Arabs to Movaraunnahr. Marv was the first in Central Asia that was occupied by Arabs. A formal agreement was signed between the Khalefah's Khurasan governor Ibn Amir and Marv population [5: 109]. According to Ahmad Balazuriy [footnote: 4] Ibn al-Amir occupied all the land to the Amudarya. When the residents of Movaraunnahr knew this, they asked for a truce. In

fact, Ibn Omir signed this truce and sent his people to get the compensation specified in it[1:17].

### Materials and Methods

Arabs' military movements to Central Asia are divided into two stages by historians. The first covers the years 650 / 651-705. In this period, Arabs made small military movements not to fully occupy this territory but this was the purpose of carrying out military training, to test the military power of local administrators, to store geographic, military, economic, political data associated with region. In the second period, that is among 705 / 6-715 years, Central Asia was fully occupied by the Arab Caliphate [4: 107-108].

From mid-seventh century, one of the features observed in the history of Central Asia was connected with the attacks of Tan Empire to western Turkish Khanate, which began in 640 year. This made Western Turks fight on two fronts. Turkish property in Central Asia and the deterioration of the political situation in Western Turkish Khanate, accelerated Arab military campaigns. According to researchers, 654 Arab troops Maymurg' [footnote: 5] attack was aimed at the study of the internal situation in Movaraunnahr [5: 110].

658-659 years. Tan Empire and the Uighur Khanate troops occupied main region of Western Turkish Khanate, a large part of Yettisuv. As a result, the Western Turkish Khanate more weakened [6: 154]. The Arab armies that used it, attacked Turkuler

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

(yabg'u) in Chagani in 667. In order to make large-scale military campaigns in Khorasan and strengthen the political situation, Marv governor Omair ibn Ahmar [footnote: 6] moved 25 thousands of Arab inhabitants from Basra and Kufato Khorasan and placed them as a military garrison to five locations. Ibn al-Ahmar Arab was the first governor that moved Arabs to Marv[1:20]. The goal was, first of all, to ensure the safety of the occupied territories and, secondly, to prepare campaigns to the next floor. However, as a result of growing internal conflicts for power in Caliphate, Arab movements to Movaraunnahr was delayed for some period [4: 108].

According to Narshakhi, in the fall of 673 year, Mu'awiya ibn Abi Sufyan [footnote: 7] based on the order of Mu'awiya ibn Abi Sufyan, the Khorasan governor Obaidullah ibn Ziyad [3:99] crossed Caihun River and occupied Poykand (the Karakul district in the current Bukhara region) and Romiton, also besieged city of Bukhara. In 680, when king of Bukhara Bidun Buxorxudot died, his son Crown Tug'shoda was still a breastfeeding child [7:92]. Therefore, Qabaj Xotun, a widow Buxorxudot, got the throne. Arab soldiers lined up outside the city and turned slings into the city. Qabaj Xotun sent people to Western Turks and asked for help, and she also sent people to Obaidullah ibn Ziyad to require seven days. Moreover, she sent many gifts mentioning, "I obey you". Because there was no help from the Turks in seven days, Qabaj Xotun again sent people to Obaidullah ibn Ziyad to ask for another seven days. Finally, the Turkish troops arrived and others were gathered together, so the army increased.

According to Narshakhi, there were many wars and finally disbelievers defeated, the Muslims harassed and killed most of them. Muslims captured weapons, clothing, gold and silver plated objects and prisoners. They also took Qabaj Xotun'sa slipper boots with socks. They were decorated with gold and precious stones, their value was two hundred thousand dirhams [7: 115].

In 676 Said bin Osman after becoming Emir of Khorasan, crossed the Caihun River and came to Bukhara. Bukhara's ruler Qabaj Xotun sent people to him, declared that there was a truce with the former emir of Khorasan Obaidullah ibn Ziyad and gave him gifts. All of a sudden, Sughd, Kesh (Shakhrisabz) and Nakhshab (Karshi) troops arrived to help. Qabaj Xotun declared that she regretted giving an offer for consolidation of peace proposals and sending gifts. Said ibn Osman sent gifts back: "Among us there is no peace," he said. After that, the Arab army and the Turkish army lined up opposite. Allah left panic into the hearts of disbelievers, the Turkish army moved back. When Qabaj Xotun left without any choice, she again sent people to Said ibn Osman, asked for a truce and sent a large amount of compensation. Nevertheless, Said declared that he want to go to Sogd and Samarkand and he requested a foreclosed man in

order not to get a problem while passing Bukhara. Qabaj Xotun sent eighty foreclosed people constituting khanazade and farmers of Bukhara[footnote: 8] to Said Bin Osman [7: 116].

Said Bin Osman did not face a serious opposition in Bukhara, in 676 after a month siege of Samarkand he reached an agreement [6: 111]. According to Narshakhi, the Said Bin Osman won many battles in Samarkand and Sogdand returned with many spoils. When he arrived in Bukhara, Qabaj Xotun sent people mentioning "you arrived safely, now leave us pledge". Said, "I still did not calm with you, before I cross Ceyhan, hostages will be with me," he replied. After he crossed Ceyhan, a woman sends a man, "wait until I reached Marv", after reaching Marv and Nishapur, then Kufa he took them to Medina. When he came to Medina, he ordered his slaves to put away swords of hostages and took their expensive clothes, gold and silver, in exchange for simple clothes, put them to sowing works. They expressed disappointment, "How can this man give us shame? He made us slaves and we die with doing useful work rather than with the humiliation". They closed the doors of Said's palace, killed him, and that they were put to death [7: 117-118].

Then, 61 AH (680/681) by the Caliph Yazid bin Muawiya ibn Ziyad (681-684) was appointed as emir of Khorasan and Sijiston and came to Khorasan. Taber based on the data of a Sheikh gave information that Khorasan residents did not adore any emirs, but only Muslim ibn Ziyad got that greatest love, so more than 20 thousand children were named Salim [8:35].

In 64 (683 \ 684) when Caliph Yazid bin Muawiya died, Mu'awiya bin Yazid bin Muawiya got caliphate throne. Abdullah ibn Hazim ibn Zabyon as-Sulami, who was from Kaysiy generation, rebelled and got Khorasan deputies and he headed Khorasan up to 72 (691 \ 692). But as-Sulayman was killed as a result of the conflict among Arabs. In 73 (692 \ 693) Buxayr bin Vishax al-Sakafiy, a year later, Umayya ibn Abdullah was appointed as governor of Khorasan. Khorasan situation was somewhat broken, and the governors were replaced frequently.

In 705 (705-715) Qutayba ibn Muslim appointed as emir of Khorasan by al-Hajjaj [footnote: 9]. Qutayba was the first to strengthen the rule of the Arab caliphate in Movaraunnahr [9]. Qutayba Muslim came to Khorasan and dominated the whole Khorasan and conquest of Tohariston ended during his period. On December 12, 706 Qutayba crossed Ceyhan River, besieged city of Poykand. After fifty-day siege, residents of the occupied city seeking to secure peace with Qutayba, left them Warqa ibn Nasr Bohiliy as leader and went to Bukhara [7: 120]

In 708-709 Bukhara and the surrounding lands were conquered. In 710-year Nasaf and Kesh were also conquered. After that, Qutayba Muslim started preparing to capture Samarkand - the main city of Sogd. However, because of the conflict between

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Chagon and Khurzod, captured Khorezm within a short period of time. 712-year Samarkand attacked and overthrew King Tarkhun. After this event, the G'urak got throne as king of Sogd and Samarkand (710-737) and was against the Arabs. G'urak resisted against the Arabs, but Qutayba won another victory. According to a formal agreement between both parties, in the end, G'urak was forced to pay compensation of 200 thousand dirhams per year, as well as the Arabs, to give up the largest community of Samarkand – Afrasiab to the Arabs. Qutayba build a mosque in the city, and G'urak was appointed as governor of Samarkand, Kesh and Nasafi by him [4: 109].

Qutayba ibn Muslim added in 713 Chach oasis, in 715 Ferghana Valley at to the caliphate and captured areas to the Kashgar. As a result, the Central Asian nations accepted Islam [4: 110].

In summary, we can say that the process of adding Central Asia to the Arab Caliphate is reflected in primary sources in Persian and Arabic languages in detail. But they are not yet fully explored. Related to this issue, making in-depth research of primary sources helps enriching the history of the region, including management systems in our regions that change the state of knowledge about the new information and enrichment.

### Footnotes

1. The third caliph Osman ibn Affan ibn Abul Os ibn Omayya (AH) was caliphate in 24-35 years (AD 644-655). In the period of Osman ibn Affan period for the first time the full text of the Qur'an was written by calligraphers using the Arabic alphabet. Friday prayers, performing namaz in groups, to say khutba in al-'id days were established. Shura - the police service was introduced for the first time.

2. Abdullah bin Amir bin Kurayz - 29 / 649-50 in his 25 years was appointed as governor of Basra and Iraq. He captured Khorasan's Nishapur, Sarahs, Abivard, Merv, Balkh, at Tolaqon and the cities of al-Foyrob by force, Omul, Mary, ar-Rud, Kharot and Kabul were obtained with peace, he was first appointed as emir of Khorasan.

3. Khorasan is located in the south-west of the historical region of Central Asia. His name in Pahlavi language means xwrasan - "sunrise" and "east".

4. Balazuriy - Abul Abbas Ahmad bin Yahya bin Jabir ibn Dawood al-Khatib al-Baghdadi al-Balazuriy (death 279 / 892-893) first wrote a book about the wars the Arabs conquered. His origin was Persian. The author of "Futuh al-Buldan" (the "The Conquest of countries").

5. Maymurg' –was one of the 9 independent properties in Zarafshan, Kashkadarya and one of the major rivers of the Amu Darya basin in the Middle Ages, a small independent kingdom near the Samarkand.

6. Omayr bin Ahmad al-Yashkuriy- was the commander of Arab army. In 27 / 647-48 he was the Khorasan governor for one year in the period of Caliph Osman ibn Affan. In 45 / 665-66 in the period of Caliph Abu Bakr al-Iraq Ziyad ibn Abu Sufyan, the Caliph of Muoviya and al-Iraq, was appointed as a governor to the city of Marv and its province.

7. Muoviya I – one of the Omayyad caliphs, caliphate period: 661-680.

8. Farmers - the first name given to the village rulers in Central Asia, in the Middle Ages.

9. Hajjaj - the vicar of the eastern part of the Arab Caliphate, in 694-714 years, al-Hajjaj ibn Yusuf; man renowned for his brutal.

### References:

1. Abul Abbas Ahmad ibn Yahya al-Balazuriy (2017). *Futuh al-Buldan. Conquest of the Khorasan / Foreword, translation from Arabic language, the author of reviews, comments and indicators* Sh.S.Kamoliddin. Tashkent: ToshDSHl.
2. At-Tabari (n.d.). "Istoriya" at-Tabari. Pervod s arabskogo V.I. Belyaeva s dopolneniyami O.G. Bol'shakova i A.B. Khalidova. *Itom.* 2897.
3. Ibn Havqal. Movaraunnahr (2011). *ibn Havqal; Arabic translation. the author of the comments, Sh.S, Kamoliddin.* Tashkent: "National Encyclopedia" State Scientific Publishing.
4. Shamsutdinov, R., & Muminov, X. (2013). *History of Uzbekistan.* Tashkent: East.
5. Otaxo'jaev, A. (2010). *The early medieval civilization in Central Asia Sogdian-Turkish relations.* Monograph. Tashkent: ART-FLEX.
6. Shoniyozov, K. (n.d.). The process of formation of the Uzbek people. (p.200). Tashkent. "East".
7. Abu Bakr Muhammad ibn Jaafar al-Narshakhiy (1991). *The history of Bukhara.* The "Rainbow".
8. at-Tabariy (n.d.). "Istoriya" at-Tabari. Pervod s arabskogo V.I. Belyaeva s dopolneniyami O.G. Bol'shakova i A.B. Khalidova. *Itom.*
9. Bartol'd, V. V. (1963). Sochineniya. *Itom.* Moscow.



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue

QR – Article



**Tokhir Abdumutalovich Khatamov**

International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan

Doctor of philosophy (Ph.D),

Docent of the Department of “Islamic History and Source Studies” Tashkent, Uzbekistan

[t.xatamov@mail.ru](mailto:t.xatamov@mail.ru)

**SECTION 13. Geography. History. Oceanology. Meteorology.**

UDC: 9 (575.1)

## STATE NATIONAL PROGRAM FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF SCHOOL EDUCATION FOR 2004–2009 YEARS: (SCIENTIFIC AND HISTORICAL ANALYSIS)

**Abstract:** *The article from a historical and scientific point of view analyzes the problems and reforms, as well as the concrete measures implemented to solve them in the public education system of Uzbekistan in the framework of the state National program for the development of school education for 2004–2009 years.*

**Key words:** *education, youth, reforms, teachers, material and technical base, textbooks.*

**Language:** *English*

**Citation:** Khatamov, T. A. (2019). State national program for the development of school education for 2004–2009 years: (scientific and historical analysis). *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 128–132.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-12> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.12>

### Introduction

One of the most important tasks faced by historians is to scientifically analyze and publicize the reforms undertaken within the framework of the state nationwide program for the Development of School Education, which is an integral and logical continuation of the National Program for Personnel Training in Uzbekistan.

The most important stage in the process of education reform is the fact that school education has become an integral part of the system of continuous education, as well as many shortcomings and problems accumulated in this period. This was especially evident in the lack of material and technical base of the schools, and the situation in the countryside was very narrow.

### Materials and Methods

Therefore, in order to overcome serious problems related to the problems of school education, strengthening their material and technical basis and forming a unified system of continuous education, and for the successful implementation of the future stages of the National Program for Personnel Training on February 19, 2004 the Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan "On Measures for the Preparation of the State Nationwide Program for the

Development of School Education for 2004–2009"[1, p. 48–56.] was issued.

The following five priority tasks have been identified in the preparation and implementation of the nationwide program. These are:

- overhaul and reconstruction of secondary school buildings and engineering and communication infrastructure;
- equipping schools with modern teaching and laboratory equipment, computer equipment, textbooks and teaching materials;
- Improvement of educational standards and curricula;
- provision of general education schools with qualified pedagogical staff, creation of effective system of training, retraining and upgrading of teachers, strengthening of their labor incentives;
- strengthening of the sports base and the development of sports in secondary schools.

Under this nation-wide program, short-term, 6 major project institutes in Uzbekistan:

A total of 2418 standard projects, technical and economic calculations and project models have been developed by *UzLITTI, Toshaharloyiha, Uzhakharsozlik, Uzdavlatibloyiha, AOOT, Uzgishloqloyiha and Uzsuvqurilishloyiha*. Also, in cooperation with the *Uzdavarkhitektqurilish* and the

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

design institutes, a project-estimate documentation has been prepared for capital reconstruction and newly constructed schools in 2004-2009 [2, p.42-47].

While studying and analyzing the status of general education schools on the basis of the order, 6872 out of 9727 generalized schools were in emergency condition, and 40% of the existing school buildings were adapted, and more than 28% of the students read in two or three shifts, so there was made a list of schools and non-completed facilities which need capital and current repairs.

The country's government emphasized the importance of promoting long-term development of school education, in terms of nation, society and the state, all of which needed to be thoroughly, accurately and systematically organized [3, p. 1-2].

The Decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan of May 21, 2004 "On the State Nationwide Program for the Development of School Education for 2004-2009" [4, p. 230-236] and Resolution of the Cabinet of Ministers of July 9, 2004 "On Measures for Realization of the State Nationwide Program for the Development of School Education for 2004-2009" [5, p. 85-112] are exactly what these goals have been.

According to the five-year plan, 8,476 of 9,727 existing schools have been set up to build, capitalize and repair the old school buildings, and improve the conditions for the education of more than 3 million pupils as a result of the reform [6, p.26].

As a result of efforts undertaken by the government of the Republic of Uzbekistan for the further deepening of the educational reforms based on the State Nationwide Program, positive results have been achieved in the first years. In particular, by the end of 2004, 430 schools were renovated in the republic. The state budget for these works 13.6 billion UZS soums were used. 142 school furniture was upgraded, schools with drinking water were reduced from 70% to 80%, gasified schools from 52.8% to 59.7%, telephone network to schools from 48% to 59%, the schools connected to the wastewater system increased from 43% to 49% [7, p.51].

In the same year a special "State Acceptance Commission" was set up under the Cabinet of Ministers and the quality of newly constructed and capital reconstructed education facilities was monitored.

Looking at the chronology of the nationwide program implementation, by 2005, the construction and repair works were completed in 1099 schools for 524319 pupils, of which 55 were newly constructed, 284 were capital reconstructed, 438 capital and 322 repaired. For this purpose, the "School Education Fund" has allocated 104.1 billion UZS soums were spent. There are also 311 professions, 380 drawings, 388 chemistry and biology, 638 physics, 693 lingaphone, 986 computer classes, 128 chemistry and 194 biological laboratories, 219 kitchens, 613 sports and 238 clothing exchange rooms were provided with

educational and technical equipment and other essential items. There were purchased 99915 a full set of pupils' desk, 7849 class boards, 7589 teacher's tables and 9365 chairs, 21105 bookshelves, 15,364 wardrobes and 2017 other necessary furniture to equip 11804 administrative-methodological and classrooms. All this has been financed by the state for 41,910 billion UZS soums was allocated [8, p.40-44].

The implementation of the the nationwide program has already begun to give results in the regions of the country. In 2005, only 22 schools were renovated in Kashkadarya region, 25 of them were reconstructed and 39 schools were repaired. Charity funds have been allocated by *Shurtangazkimyo* (gas factory) and *Gazkimyochi* (gas factory) for 478 million UZS soums [9, p.7-15].

In Namangan region, 16 schools were repaired in 2005 alone. For this purpose, the Asian Development Bank (ADB) has allocated 619 million UZS soums to finance projects, 298 UZS million soums for educational equipment and 156 million UZS soums for computer equipment was allocated by our government [10, p.11-18].

In 2005, five new schools were built in Tashkent region and for these purposes 1, 364 billion were spent. For the reconstruction of 39 schools 7,139 billion UZS soums, 2,437 billion UZS soums for major overhaul of 37 schools, for current repair of 11 schools – 202,650 million UZS soums were used. In addition, on the initiative of the governor of Tashkent region, a total of \$ 233,264 million UZS soums was allocated for current repairs of schools [11, p.20-29].

For the purpose of social protection of pupils, the government of the Republic 590087 pupils enrolled in the first class of the 2004-2005 school year has allocated 10,988 billion UZS soums for 590087 pupils, in the case of delivery of winter clothes to 709546 children and 12 types of study instruments and 1-9 grades of low-income families, 713832 sets of clothing were handed over to those in need of social protection in 2005-2006 academic year. In 2005, charity organizations carried out construction and repair works worth 596 million UZS soums in orphanages. The sponsorships for these institutions were sponsored by sponsors for the period from 2005 to 2007 totaling 37,670 billion UZS soums of sports equipment, soft and solid furniture were delivered [12, p.21-28].

In the Republic of Karakalpakstan, in 2006, 7 out of 100 planned schools were reconstructed, 36 schools were renovated, 32 schools were repaired, and 25 schools were repaired, of which 17.1 billion UZS soums were spent [13, p.85-112].

According to the analysis, in 2006 the number of newly constructed schools increased by 7 in 2006, the number of capital reconstructed schools increased by 102 and the number of capital repairs was 92. The total amount of 54.1 billion UZS soums was spent on the

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

national program for the period from 2004-2006 to more than 350 types of school equipment.

By the end of 2007 more than 50% of the tasks set out in the Nationwide Program were implemented. In particular, in 2004-2007, 4669 secondary schools were built and repaired, 215 new school buildings were built, 1174 schools were capital reconstructed, 2074 schools were repaired and 1216 schools were repaired. The total amount of 600.7 billion UZS soums was spent by the School Education Fund. Of the 4669 educational institutions, 3768 (80.6%) were in rural areas, 120 (2.6%) in mountainous areas difficult to reach, and 781 (16.8%) in urban areas. As a result of these reforms, the gap between rural and urban schools has diminished. Also, by 2007, 1606 schools were equipped with modern computer classes. Computerization was financed at the expense of budgetary funds totaling 8.4 billion UZS soums and \$ 23.6 million at the expense of credit resources.

We see that in 2008, the objectives of the nationwide program were consistently continued. In particular, 70 new school buildings were built, 583 were capital reconstructed, and 792 buildings and structures were capital renovated and 416 were repaired. "School Education Fund" provided 138 billion UZS soums to equip 1881 schools.

Умуммиллий дастур ижросининг сўнги 2009 йилги режасига 1957 та умумтаълим мактаблар киритилган бўлиб, улардан 66 таси янгидан курилди, 710 таси капитал реконструкция, 754 таси капитал ва 427 таси жорий таъмирланди.

In the last year of implementation of the nationwide program for 2009 1957 general education schools were included, 66 of which were reconstructed, 710 capital reconstructed, 754 capital renovated and 427 renovated.

A total of 437.2 billion UZS soums was allocated for these purposes, and also, 19.8 million US dollars was disbursed through foreign investment (Saudi Fund for Development and OPEC) for the construction of 28 new schools. In 2009, the Year of Rural Development and Improvement, a special attention was paid to the construction and repair of schools in rural areas. 1606 (82.2%) of the 1957 schools repaired and newly built in the nationwide program were in rural areas and 89 (4.5%) in difficult to get areas.

The broad involvement of foreign investments into the education sector played an important role in the development of fundamental reforms, which are being implemented in line with the tasks of the National Program. The Resolution of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Uzbekistan "On Measures to Establish Extra-Budgetary School Education Fund" of June 7, 2004 [14, p.14-21] has given broader access to this area.

Based on the preferential loan of the Islamic Development Bank, 15 new general education schools

with a total area of 5355 pupils were built in 2004-2009 according to the project "Construction and equipping of secondary schools in the Republic of Uzbekistan".

In the promising investment program of the Ministry of Public Education, in cooperation with the Asian Development Bank, the Education Development Development (2003-2007, 39 million US dollars) project [15, p.72-83] the repair and maintenance of 15 remote training resource centers and 70 remote training centers, as well as repairs and equipping of 150 schools with repairs and equipment within the project have been completed [16, p.2-13].

Also, in cooperation with the People's Republic of China, "Construction and equipping general education schools" (2005-2006, 28 million US dollars), "Equipping general secondary schools with modern computer classes" (2005-2007, 19 million US dollars loan, 1 million US dollars grant) project, in cooperation with the World Bank, "Informatization and Computerization of Basic Schools" (2006-2007, 7 million US dollars) and as a result of the Asian Development Bank's "Provision of Laboratory and Computer Equipment for General Education Schools" (12 million US dollars for 2006-2009), 5278 schools were fully and partially modernized in 2004-2009 [17, p.5-13].

Besides, with the help of the World Bank, over 1,000 schools have been involved in the implementation of the second phase of the project "Development of school education" (40 million US dollars in 2007-2010), and small grants have also been allocated. In 2004, a total of 1 million US dollars was provided by the government of Japan under the "Social Benefit Program". 14 small grants agreements were signed and funds were spent for construction and repair of schools and provision of modern educational and technical equipment. Also, the Austrian Embassy allocated 2.5 thousand US dollars for the development of the material and technical base of the Piskent district of Tashkent region, in 2008 the German Embassy provided 200 modern computers for secondary schools. As a result of cooperation between the educational institutions of Uzbekistan and the Republic of South Korea, in the 2007-2008 academic year, the Department of Education of Seoul provided 600 computers to 30 general education schools in Tashkent [18, p. 85-112.]. Such positive changes were the result of the ongoing reforms of the National Program and the Nationwide Program.

Before the program was adopted, 9727 general education schools were available in the country, and by the end of 2009 the number of general education schools in Uzbekistan reached 9773. Additionally, 47 new school buildings for 14,997 pupils were constructed, capital rehabilitation of 30 school buildings for 14424 pupils, 95 existing buildings and facilities for 58,532 pupils, and 230 schools for

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHIQ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

132620 pupils were repaired. The total 402 schools for 220,573 students were rebuilt and repaired.

For 2004-2009, "School Education Fund" and "the Children's Sports Development Fund" under the Ministry of Public Education provided a total of 6626 secondary schools (45.1% or 4386 more than in 2004) for the strengthening of the sports base and the development of sports in general education schools' gyms were renovated and reconstructed.

During the period under review, if we calculate the results of the work carried out in the country on the basis of the state national program for the development of school education, we see that the main priorities identified in the program were strengthened in the material and technical base of schools.

In particular, construction works were carried out in 8501 schools with a capacity of more than 3 million pupils for the overhaul and reconstruction of buildings and engineering and communication infrastructure. In addition, 351 new school buildings with 1,166.40 pupils were constructed, 2470 school buildings and engineering and communication infrastructure for 850,951 pupils were completely

reconstructed, 3607 schools with a total capacity of 2,044,582 were capitalized and 2072 of them were repaired. 1326 (16%) of these restored schools are located in urban areas, 6887 (81%) are in rural areas, and 287 (3%) are difficult places to get.

### Conclusion

Based on the findings of the research, it should be noted that, thanks to the attention of our state schools, new schools were built and repaired, their material and technical base was strengthened. In particular, about 1.5 trillion UZS soums were spent for the State National Program for the Development of School Education in 2004-2009 [19, p.1-2]. Priority tasks outlined in this program have been of great importance in the deepening of the educational reforms in our country. And most importantly, the conditions of secondary schools in the country, covering most of the country's young people, have been improved, and secondary schools have reached the level of world-class educational institutions.

### References:

1. (2008). *Collection of normative-legal acts on education of the Republic of Uzbekistan*. (pp.48-56). Tashkent: "O'qituvchi", T.1.
2. (n.d.). Report on monitoring results of the Ministry of Public Education of the Republic of Uzbekistan (hereinafter - MPE Rep of Uz) for 2006-2007 academic year. 3215-stock. 5- list, 32-work, 42-47 pages.
3. (2004, February 25). Ma'rifat newspaper.
4. (2008). *Collection of normative-legal acts on education of the Republic of Uzbekistan*. (pp.230-236). Tashkent: "O'qituvchi", T.1.
5. (2008). *Collection of normative-legal acts on education of the Republic of Uzbekistan*. (pp.85-112). Tashkent: "O'qituvchi", T.2.
6. (n.d.). Current archive MPE Rep of Uz. Reports from the Republican Training Center. 2621-stock. list 31, 34-work, p.26.
7. (n.d.). Current archive MPE Rep of Uz. 3845-stock. list 46, 90-work, page 51.
8. (n.d.). Current archive MPE Rep of Uz. 3125-stock. list 64, 21-work, page 40-44.
9. (n.d.). Current archive MPE Rep of Uz. Main administration of general education schools. Report on the work done in 2005 on "State National Program for the Development of School Education in 2004-2009". 5612-stock. list 64, 21-work, pp.7-15.
10. (n.d.). Information on the construction and repairs of general secondary schools in general education schools in 2005 on the basis of national plans. 3125-stock. list 52, 14-work, pp.11-18.
11. (n.d.). Reports from the Department for Investments and International Cooperation. 3125-stock. list 18, 07-work, pp.20-29.
12. (n.d.). Reports from the Tashkent Regional Department of Public Education. 3512-stock. list 3, 19-work, pp.21-28.
13. (n.d.). Reports from the Tashkent Regional Department of Public Education. 3512-stock. list 3, 19-work, V.2. pp. 85-112.
14. (n.d.). Reports from the General Directorate of Secondary Schools. 3125-stock. list 5, 31-work, page 14-21.
15. (2008). *Collection of normative-legal acts on education of the Republic of Uzbekistan*. (pp.72-83). Tashkent: "O'qituvchi". V.2.
16. (n.d.). "Education System Development" Program (2003-2007) of the Department for the Creation of a New Generation of Textbooks and Study Materials Literature, Ministry of Public Education of Uzbekistan. 5213-stock. list 13, 10-work, pp.2-13.
17. (n.d.). Report of the International Cooperation and Investments Capacity Building and

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

- Implementation of International Cooperation Plans for 2006-2009 Ministry of Public Education of Uzbekistan. 3642-stock. list 24, 31-work, pp.5-13.
18. (n.d.). Report of the International Cooperation and Investments Capacity Building and Implementation of International Cooperation Plans for 2006-2009 Ministry of Public Education of Uzbekistan. 3642-stock. list 24, 31-work, V.2. pp.85-112.
19. (2009, September 30). A congratulatory message of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan. "Xalq so'zi " newspaper.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 15.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue

QR – Article



Abdujabbor Abdusattarovich Yaminov

International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan

Doctor of philosophy (Ph.D),

Department of "Islamic History and Source Studies"

Tashkent, Uzbekistan

[sino\\_1968@mail.ru](mailto:sino_1968@mail.ru)

SECTION 17. World history. History of science  
and technology.

UDC: 94 (5) 001 (093.3)

## IDEOLOGICAL FOUNDATIONS OF IBN SINA'S PHILOSOPHY

**Abstract:** *Abu Ali ibn Sina's scientific-creative activities are varied, and the scholar practiced in all fields of science of his time. In the world, he is known mainly as a physician, but he is a great philosopher in the eyes of scientists. In other words, medicine is only part of Ibn Sina's philosophy. However, Ibn Sina was not only a philosopher. Shaykhurrais's both secular and religious works, rightly can be claimed that he is the rare person of the world science and culture.*

**Key words:** *Ancient philosophy, Wisdom, Greek philosophers, Socio-philosophical thought, Oriental philosophy, Manuscript, medieval sources, classification of science, logic.*

**Language:** *English*

**Citation:** *Yaminov, A. A. (2019). Ideological foundations of ibn Sina's philosophy. ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, 06 (74), 133-136.*

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-13> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.13>

### Introduction

Shaykhurrais (leader of scholars) Abu Ali al-Husain ibn Abdullah ibn al-Hasan ibn Ali ibn Sina (980-1037) is a great encyclopedist who made a great contribution to the development of the Oriental socio-philosophical thought. His name is the most prominent of all known, well-known and famous scholars, philosophers and educators of all times. In medieval miniatures, Ibn Sina was rightly described by the great figures of science as Hippocrates (460-370 BC), Plato (427-347 BC), Aristotle (384-322 BC), Euclid (323-285), Galen (129-216) and Ptolemy (100-170).

The life and work of Abu Ali ibn Sina have been studied by both Uzbek and foreign scholars for many years. The earliest and most accurate information about him is given in Arabic sources of the Middle Ages such as Abu al-Hasan al-Bayhaqi's (died in 565/1169-1170) "Tatimmat sivan al-hikma" ("Addition to the Wisdom Bookshelf") [1, p. 20-41], Ibn al-Qifti's "Tarikh al-Hukama" ("History of the Philosophers") [3, p. 268-278], Ibn Abi Usaybi'as (died in 668/1270) "Uyun al-Anba fi Tabaqat al-Atibba" ("The Fountain Of News About Healers") [11, p. 2-20] and Ibn Khallikan's (died in 681/1282) "Wafayat al-a'yan" ("The Great People's Deaths") [2, p. 152-154]. In addition to the information they

collected about Ibn Sina's life and work, the authors also, used the "Autobiography" that the scholar began to write himself that was completed by his student Abu Ubayd al-Juzjani (died in 437/1047).

### Materials and Methods

The authors of the book " Tarikh al-Hukama " and "Uyun al-Anba fi Tabaqat al-Atibba" provided some of the information in their works from the scholar's speech and the other part by the words of his student. Ibn al-Qifti is limited to the basic information of the life and work of the scholar, and nearly half of the twenty-two pages of Ibn Sina's biography are in the works of Abi Usaibe with his poems are unique. However, the author, in contrast to the other, refers to the date of the birth of the scientist 375/985-986 and states that he lived fifty-three years [11, p. 9].

Al-Bayhaqi and Ibn Khallikan did not specify the source of their work. Al-Bayhaqi also wrote a fascinating story that took place in the life of the scholar and was not found in other sources. Alouddavla Abu Ja'far Muhammad ibn Dushmanziyar (398-43 /1007-1041) gave Ibn Sina gold and silver embroidered belt. He gave it a slave of one of the palace officials, and he suffered from the wrath of Alouddavla, in other words he was sentenced to death. He by the help of one of the palace officials managed

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

to escape, in Ray he had been acquainted with a clever guy, after he was pardoned by Alouddavla and then recruited to the palace, he took the young man with him to Isfahan and he became one of the leaders of the emir [1, p. 39-41].

All the authors, who we mentioned their names, in their works described Ibn Sina, each work has its own distinctive features. These features help the reader to have a fuller idea of the scholar.

The Arabs referred to him as "Hakim" because he was known as a great physician in the world. This word is generally used to refer to philosophers. Ibn Sina has mastered the sciences founded until his time, and he himself worked almost all in these sciences. If Ibn Sina's works are categorized according to the science's network, then all the knowledge known in the Middle Ages must be codified. However, philosophical issues play a central role in the scientific works of Ibn Sina. Ibn Sina considered philosophy as a complex of sciences, the sum of all human wisdom. The scholar gave philosophical shape in whatever subject he dealt with. Whatever the science field, it was regarded as a system of general knowledge and whatever a particular scientific issue was dealt, all issues are examined from a philosophical point of view. It is obvious that his works as poet and writer based on philosophical ideas.

Ibn Sina thought that philosophy's task is to explore the existence of all things, their origins, order, relationships, and transformation into each other. According to him, the universe is a complex, complex entity.

Philosophy discusses all the realities of the present universe and, therefore, encompasses them and examines all the common truths about the origin of existence, whether they are human beings or not.

To illustrate the role of philosophy in the works of Ibn Sina, it is also desirable to see how he had been taught such things at an early age and how important it was in different stages of his life.

Ibn Sina was impressed by the richness of his speech, his endurance and diligence in the work of science. From his childhood because of having strong memory and being clever, he began to master knowledge quickly. At the age of ten, he memorized the Koran, Husain focused his attention on primary sciences as fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence), philosophy, mathematics, and logic. Studying the fiqh from Isma'il Zahid, "... and I have become one of the best-known men who has learned the ways of controversy and the methods of appeal. Then I started studying "Isoguji"<sup>1</sup>

from Notilia<sup>2</sup>. ... I read five or six theorems from the beginning of the book of Uqlidus in his volume ... Then I went to "... al-Majisti"<sup>3</sup> [9, p. 7], telling about his first teachers. Then he learned from Hasan ibn Nuh al-Qumri [7, p. 271], medicine, from Farabi's (872-950) "Fusus al-hikam" ("The Real Meaning of Wisdom Words"), "Purposes of the book "Metaphysics"" commentaries on naturalism, theology and logic. The "Purpose of the Book of "Metaphysics"" is a commentary to "Metaphysics" written by Aristotle and Ibn Sina had read it forty times for not understanding Aristotle's work till reading it. [9, p. 10-11]. The scientific debate of Ibn Sina with the great scholars of his time, including Abu Rayhan Beruni, began in these years. As for the future scientist, how much he continued to study, he said: "When I was eighteen years old, I was able to master all sciences ... and nothing new has ever been added since then [9, p. 11].

One of the philosophers who were in close contact with Ibn Sina was Abu Sahl al-Masihiy, who lived and worked in Khorezm (970/971-1010/1011). Although he wrote works on philosophy, medicine, astronomy, and mathematics, he was generally recognized as a physician. He was died at the age of 40 when he was going from Khorezm to Khurasan with Ibn Sina because of Sultan Mahmud.

While Ibn Sina was in Khorezm for a while at the Dar al-hikma (Ma'mun Academy), he worked with Ibn Miskawa (1030), Abu Nasr bin Iraq (960-1036), Abulhayr Hamor (942-1048), Abu Rayhon Beruniy (973-1048), and also closely cooperated with such mature scholars. He conducted scientific talks with Beruni and his student Bammanyor about the spatial and heat dissipation, the expansion of the items from the heat, the reflection of the light and breaking down, and later these philosophical debates became popular in the world as questions and answers. Eighteen of these questions have come to our time, and their manuscripts are currently awaiting their researchers at the Manuscripts of the Abu Rayhan Beruni Institute of Oriental Studies in the Academy of Sciences of the Republic of Uzbekistan.

The Sunnis<sup>4</sup> dominated the religious environment, and the teachings of the Ismailis<sup>5</sup> were much more profound in studying secular sciences than Sunnis. The theoretical foundations of the Ismailian mentality were influenced by ancient Greek philosophical doctrines. Since Ibn Sina's father, Abdullah, had been a member of the family of Ismailis, the conversations between these members of

<sup>1</sup> "Isoguji" is an Arabic translation of Porfiry's "Introduction," which deals with the foundation of logic.

<sup>2</sup> Abu Abdullah Notiliy is one of Ibn Sina's teacher who teaches philosophy, logic, geometry and astronomy.

<sup>3</sup> "Al-Majisti" is the "Almagest" by the ancient Greek astronomer Batlimus (Ptolomey), who lived in the second century AD. According to Ad-Juzhiji, Ibn Sina wrote in the Jurjon period, "Abbreviations of al-Majidhi".

<sup>4</sup> Sunnah is one of the two main concepts in the religion of Islam and is common and the other is Shiali.

<sup>5</sup> The Ismailis - VIII-ACP in the middle of the Arab Caliphate, formed in shiali direction, and favored the religious trend widely spread in Near and Middle East in the X-XI centuries. By the end of the 11th century, Ismailism was formed as an independent religious group.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

his family led to the development of scientific discoveries of the scholar and the study of natural-scientific and philosophical works of ancient Greek thinkers. He says: "My father was one of those who accepted the call of the Egyptians and was among the Ismailites, and I was listening to their words about soul and mind, and so did my brother. Often, as they talked about it, I was listening to what they were saying and talking about, but my heart would not accept it. And they began to call me [their doctrine]. They talked a lot about philosophy, handasa [geometry] and the Indian account" [9, p. 7].

Ibn Sina was genius. His intelligence was inspired by Pythagoras (570-490 BC), Socratic (469-399 BC), Buccaneer, Plato, Aristotle, Euclidean, Jolinus, Ptolemy, Porphyry (233-305) and the thinkers of the Orient developed and developed on a solid foundation. He also mastered many sciences from Abu Jurayj Mosarjavayh, Muhammad al-Dimashqi, Ibn Mosawayh (777-857), Saxorbux (died in 873), Sabur bin Sahl (died in 869), Ali ibn Rabban at-Tabariy (838-870) and Abu Bakr Razi (865-925).

From the careful study of Ibn Sina's scientific heritage, it becomes clear that the first and most important source of the philosophy of Shaykhurras was the philosophy of ancient philosophy, in particular Aristotle's peripatetic philosophy (Peripatetic (Greek, Peripateticos – done on travel) - Aristotle's Fans. This name is based on the fact that in 335 AD, Aristotle's philosophical school (Likey), which was founded in Athens, was usually taught during the travel. The peripatetic school lasted for almost a thousand years (until AD 529) and was the largest center of ancient science. After the death of Aristotle, Ephesian Teofrast (pre-era 372-287), who was famous for his works of botany, from Lampsak Straton (305-270 BC), and Andronik Rodos (first century BC), who published Aristotle's works, Alexander Aphrodisius (the beginning of the second century AD - beginning of the 3rd century) was the most prominent leaders of the peripatetic school [8, p. 373]. Ibn Sina emphasized the philosophy of Aristotle's philosophy with his. In his book "Fan Sama' tabii" ("The science of natural harmony") he writes: "Now we have to study the science of nature in accordance with our own attitudes and views. In this we will follow the path of peripatetic philosophy and direct all our efforts to study difficult issues that are far from certain" [13, p. 50].

Ibn Sina relied on Aristotle in basic philosophical problems such as the relationship between matter and the structure of matter and the origin of the existence of the material, the nature and essence of matter, the eternity of the world, the soul and the body, the interconnectedness and variability of the origin of the existence, their inevitable and objective legality.

It is noteworthy that Aristotle played an important role in the formation of philosophical views of Ibn Sina, even so Ibn Sina was not a propagandist or commentator of the teachings of Aristotle. The Shaykhurras further developed the advanced aspects and enriched some aspects of Arastun's teachings. As we study the works of Ibn Sina, we can think of Aristotle's thoughts as well as his arguments, which proved to be mentally credible. He writes in his book *Hikmat al-Mashriqî* ("The Oriental Philosophy"):

"We consider [Aristotle] as the greatest scholar among the previous peripatetic. Because he discovered that his friends and teachers did not know. He has classified the sciences and has put it well. He solved many problems and conveyed them to his people. The next had to correct Aristotle's mistakes by relying on mind. But his followers did not do that. They devoted themselves to understanding the right sides of his doctrine, and blindly supporting his mistakes in thier lifetime ... We did what they wanted, but they could not, and we enriched some of aspects of his teachings" [13, p. 51].

## Conclusion

In general, it is commonplace to have a detailed study of the information available to you on a specific area of research. Therefore, it is possible to observe this phenomenon in the work of Ibn Sina. As it has been observed in al-Kindi (died in 873), al-Farabi, Ibn Bojja (1080-1138), Ibn Tufail (1105-1185), Ibn Rushd (1126-1198), Nasiriddin at-Tusiy (1201-1274) and the philosophy of ancient Greek philosophy, especially the philosophy of Aristotle, played an important role in the formation of his outlook.

It is possible to conclude that Ibn Sina gradually put scientific truths and philosophies created by scholars before him, and enriched them with his scientific novelty. This is his role in the history of science and scientific advancement.

## References:

1. Abu al-Hasan al-Bayhaqi (n.d.). *Tatimma sivan al-hikma. Manuscript of the Abu Rayhan Beruni* Institute of Oriental Studies in the Academy of

Sciences of the Republic of Uzbekistan. Inv. № 1448.



**Impact Factor:**

**ISRA** (India) = **3.117**  
**ISI** (Dubai, UAE) = **0.829**  
**GIF** (Australia) = **0.564**  
**JIF** = **1.500**

**SIS** (USA) = **0.912**  
**PIHHI** (Russia) = **0.156**  
**ESJI** (KZ) = **8.716**  
**SJIF** (Morocco) = **5.667**

**ICV** (Poland) = **6.630**  
**PIF** (India) = **1.940**  
**IBI** (India) = **4.260**  
**OAJI** (USA) = **0.350**

2. Ibn Khallikan (1892). *Wafayat al-a'yan*. Egipt: Maymaniya.
3. Ibn al-Qifti (1908). *"Tarikh al-hukama"*. Egipt: As-sa'ada.
4. Mirzaeyv, S. (1955). *Ibn Sinoning Sharqshunoslik institutida mavjud asarlari*. Tashkent: Fan.
5. Irisov, A. (1960). *Abu Ali Ibn Sino*. Tashkent: Fan.
6. Mets, A. (1966). *Musulmanskiy renrnsans*. Moscow: Nauka.
7. Khayrullaeyv, M. (1971). *Uyg'onish davri va sharq mutafakkiri*. Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
8. Abdurahmanov, R. (1976). *Filosofiya* (dictionary). Tashkent: O'zbekiston.
9. Irisov, A. (1980). *Abu Ali Ibn Sino tarjimai holi*. Tashkent: Fan.
10. Zavadovskiy, Y. N. (1980). *Abu Ali Ibn Sina*. Dushanbe: Irfon.
11. Ibn Abi Usaybia (1882). *Uyun al-anba fi tabaqat al-atibba*. Egipt: Vahbiyya.
12. Vahabova, B. A. (1982). *Rukopisi proizvedeniy Ibn Sini v sobranii Instituta Vostokovedeniya Akademii Nauk SSR*. Tashkent: Fan.
13. Dinorshoyev, M. (1985). *Naturfilosofiya Ibn Sini*. Dushanbe: Donish.
14. Bagirova, S. G. (1987). *Sochinenie «Tatimma sivan al-hikma al-Bayhaqi kak obrazets srednevekovogo entsiklopedicheskogo spravochnika»*. Tashkent: Fan.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)  
**International Scientific Journal**  
**Theoretical & Applied Science**  
p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)  
Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74  
Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue

QR – Article



**Shukhrat Rustamovich Tokhtiev**  
International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan  
Teacher of the Department of “Islamic History and  
Source Studies”, Tashkent, Uzbekistan  
(90)185-09-36  
[shuhrat55567@mail.ru](mailto:shuhrat55567@mail.ru)

## THE ROLE OF ISMAILISM AND ITS SECTS IN THE HISTORY OF SHIISM

**Abstract:** The article is devoted to the role of the history of Ismailism and its movements. The article discusses some historical data on the emergence of Ismaili as one of the trends of Shiism, especially its dogma and the role its sects in the history of Muslim countries.

**Key words:** Ismailism, Djafar as-Sadik, Ismail bin Djafar, Musa al-Kazim, batinitis, dai, mahdi, nizarits, mustalits.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Tokhtiev, S. R. (2019). The role of Ismailism and its sects in the history of Shiism. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 137-144.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-14> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.14>

### РОЛЬ ИСМАИЛИЗМА И ЕГО СЕКТ В ИСТОРИИ ШИИЗМА

**Аннотация:** Статья посвящена одному из основных течений шиизма – исмаилизма и его сект. В статье рассмотрены некоторые исторические данные о возникновении исмаилизма как одно из течений шиизма, особенности его догматики и ролей его сект в истории мусульманских стран.

**Ключевые слова:** исмаилизм, Джафар ас-Садык, Исмаил б. Джафар, Муса ал-Казим, батиниты, даи, махди, низариты, мусталиты.

### Introduction

Исмаилизм – как одно из направлений ислама, не может остаться не затронутым исследователями, занимающимися историей ислама и востоковедами. Знание данной темы поможет более успешному пониманию того что происходит в духовной и политической жизни некоторых мусульманских стран, и в особенности соседних с нами Таджикистана и Афганистана, где проживает значительная по численности община исмаилитов. Кроме того, данное направление представляет интерес само по себе своей самобытностью и неординарностью.

Как известно, в середине VIII века халифат Омеядов находился в тяжелом кризисе. Это вызвало ряд восстаний в различных провинциях халифата, из которых наиболее значительным было восстание хуррамитов (хуррамдинитов) под руководством Бабека (199-222/815-837). Идеи хуррамитов, тесно связанные с маздакизмом,

оказывали значительное влияние на учения различных крайних (гулат) шиитских сект, а впоследствии и на исмаилизм [5:73-74; 14:92-102; 19:71-81].

### Materials and Methods

Возникновение исмаилизма, как средневековые авторы, так и современные исследователи, связывают с расколом в среде шиитов в середине VIII века. Но основные шиитские представления, составляющие ядро исмаилитских учений (имамат, тавил и т.п.), появились задолго до середины II/VIII века [5:71].

Шестой шиитский имам Абу Абдаллах Джафар б. Мухаммад ас-Садык (ум. 148/765), находился в мирных отношениях с омеядским халифом Хишамом (106-125/724-743) и аббасидским халифом ал-Мансуром (136-158/754-775). После падения Омеядов в 132/750 г. он

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667  
ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

отказался от халифата, предложенного ему как главе Алидов [2:32-33; 28:189].

Недовольных сторонников возглавил некий Абу ал-Хаттаб Мухаммад б. Абу Зайнаб Миклас ал-Аджа ал-Асади (ум. 138/755-756). Абу ал-Хаттаб был первым шиитом, основавшим движение особого типа – *батини*.

Взгляды Абул-л-Хаттаба нашли отклик у сына имама ас-Садыка Исмаила б. Джафара. Абу ал-Хаттаб принародно был проклят ас-Садыком в 137/754-755 году. Тогда Абу ал-Хаттаб стал утверждать, что божественный свет от Алидов перешел к нему. В 760 году хаттабиты подняли восстание в Куфе, но оно было подавлено. После гибели Абу ал-Хаттаба хаттабиты распались на пять групп.

Помимо Абу ал-Хаттаба из окружения Джафар ас-Садыка вышли такие идеологи шиизма и теоретики исмаилизма как Маймун ал-Каддах (ум. ок. 179/796) и его сын, активный деятель и теоретик в окружении Джафара – Абдаллах б. Маймун ал-Каддах (ум. 210/825)<sup>1</sup>. Именно эти три человека «были истинными создателями и теоретиками исмаилитского учения».

Непосредственным поводом к появлению исмаилизма, явился спор о наследовании имамата после смерти имама Джафара. Он лишил своего старшего сына Исмаила права наследования. Джафар назначил наследником своего четвертого сына Мусу ал-Казима (ум. 182/799). Это было связано с тем, что Исмаил входил в группировку крайних (*сулат*) шиитов, недовольных примиренчеством и бездеятельностью шиитского руководства и требовавших от него решительных выступлений против суннитских властей.

Исмаил умер на три года раньше своего отца (145/762 г.). Но часть наиболее ревностных почитателей Исмаила отрицала его смерть. По их мнению, Исмаил должен вернуться в качестве *каима* и они объявили Исмаила седьмым и последним имамом [4:49]. Большинство же приверженцев Исмаила признало имамом его сына Мухаммада. Эту группировку шиитов стали называть «*ал-мубаракийа*» по эпитету Исмаила б. Джафара – ал-Мубарак (Благословенный) [33:108-112].

По свидетельству Джувайни, Мухаммад б. Исмаил укрылся от преследований со стороны Аббасидов сначала в Джибале, затем прибыл в Рей, а оттуда в Демавенд, близ Рейя, в Иране [10:104-105] и умер вскоре после 179/795 г. После смерти Мухаммада б. Исмаила в рядах *мубаракийа* произошел раскол [2:163-164; 29:181]. Одна группа продолжала тайно следовать потомству почившего имама. Но существование

этой группировки не фиксировалось вплоть до реформы исмаилитской доктрины Абдаллаха ал-Махди (297-322/909-934) основавшего фатимидское государство в Северной Африке. Большая же часть мубаракитов не признала смерть Мухаммада б. Исмаила, своего седьмого и последнего имама, ожидая его пришествия в качестве *махди* или *каим*. Именно эту группу имамитские доксографы идентифицировали как прямых предшественников карматов (*ал-каримита*) [20:290]. Как следует из сообщений ан-Наубахти и ал-Кумми, карматы, восходящие к *мубаракийа*, ограничили линию своих имамов семью имамами. Поэтому их еще называют *ас-сабийя* «семеричники». Они признавали семь имамов и ожидали возвращения Мухаммада б. Исмаила в качестве *имам ал-каим ал-махди* [2:165,181; 9:58].

Потомки Мухаммада б. Исмаила, спасаясь от преследований, разбрелись по разным странам. Имя и местопребывание того из них, кто признавался очередным имамом, сообщалось только немногим, Период истории исмаилитов, до начала X в., называлось временем сокрытия («*давр ас-самп*») [34:712-713]. О «скрытых» имамах известно мало, сами имена их в разных источниках передаются неодинаково. Исмаилиты создали разветвленную тайную организацию adeptов секты и начали широкую пропаганду исмаилизма – *дава*. Энергичные *даи* («миссионер», «пропагандист») распространяли учение секты.

Исмаилитские источники, подтверждаемые и некоторыми антиисмаилитскими, сообщают сведения о трех поколениях между Мухаммадом б. Исмаилом и Абдаллахом ал-Махди, основателем государства Фатимидов. Первым из этих правителей считается Абдаллах, которого в поздних исмаилитских источниках называют «ал-Акбар» («Старший»). Умер он в Саламийе вскоре после 260/874 г. Усилия Абдаллаха ал-Акбара по реорганизации и укреплению исмаилитского движения начали приносить плоды в 870-х гг., когда большое количество *даи* появились в Южном Ираке и других территориях. В 874 г. Ал-Хусайн ал-Ахвази, влиятельный *даи*, обратил в исмаилизм Хамдана б. ал-Ашаса по прозвищу Кармат или Карматуя [12:132].

Хамдан организовал *дава* в Саваде Куфы, а также в ряде других районах Ирака. Главным помощником Хамдана был его зять Абдан из Ахваза. Хамдану и Абдану быстро удалось завоевать популярность среди исмаилитов Южного Ирака, а также обратить в исмаилизм значительную часть сельского населения Савада

<sup>1</sup> Интересно предание о том, что Абдаллах б. Маймун ал-Каддах в своих тайных беседах говорил о якобы существующем пророчестве, согласно которому господство в

Средней Азии и Иране должно снова достаться потомкам дихканов, т. е. старой земельной аристократии [6:124].

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667  
ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Куфы. Вскоре всех последователей Хамдана Кармата стали называть «карматами». Однако, у ат-Табари еще под 255/868-869 г. сообщается, что среди восставших против халифата рабов-зинджей, к которым примкнули крестьяне и беднейшие бедуины с отрядом бойцов, которые именовались карматами [20:280-281]. Однако известно оно еще до восстания зинджей. Возможно, что Хамдан получил свое прозвище от названия уже существовавшей организации [20:281].

Социальная и частично идеологическая программа была почерпнута карматами и исмаилитами у маздакистов. Эти идеи в последующем играли огромную роль в развитии и распространении исмаилизма по всем странам ислама и в Центральной Азии в том числе.

Хамдан основал свою тайную штаб-квартиру [9:55] в Калвазе, недалеко от Багдада. В 278/890 году Хамдан основал возле Куфы *дар ал-хиджра*. Это, резиденция махди, место, где основана его религия [7:106]. Постепенно Хамдан и Абдан распространили исмаилитский *дава* на соседние с Южным Ираком территории, особенно Фарс.

Именно после образования государства Фатимидов и карматов Бахрейна, начинается деление исмаилитского учения на «собственно карматство и исмаилизм». Основное разногласие между Фатимидами и карматами в области догматики, по мнению В.А.Иванова, заключалось в непризнании карматами «непрерывного имамата» – наследственной власти имама. Карматы считали «приход Махди», объявленный Фатимидами, ложным и что «последний натик» еще явится и ожидали его прихода. Их учение принадлежало к типу «*вакифа*» («остановившийся имамат»).

Политика Фатимидов была направлена на установление своего господства над всей территорией Северной Африки. В 358/969 г. Фатимидам удалось овладеть Египтом. После завоевания Египта Фатимиды активизировали проповедь исмаилизма. Начало открытой пропаганды связано с фамилией ан-Нуманов. Ее основатель, Абу Ханифа ан-Нуман б. Мухаммад б. Мансур б. Ахмад б. Хайун ат-Тамими ал-Кайруани ал-Магриби, прозванный Казим Нуман (ум. 363/974), осуществил кодификацию исмаилитского фикха. Среди многих его трудов особенно важно изложение исмаилитского учения, называемого «Даим ал-ислам» («Столпы ислама»). Вазир Абу-л-Фарадж Йакуб б. Каллис (ум. 381/991) составил книгу по исмаилитскому законоведению «Рисалат ал-вазирийа» («Визирское послание») [22:109].

В 395/1005 г. в одном из дворцов халифа был открыт *дар ал-хикма* с большой библиотекой шиитской литературы, где устраивались публичные лекции, которыми руководил главный

дан. Пропаганда велась и за пределами фатимидского государства.

В то же время в персоязычных странах *даи* успешно синтезировали теологию с различными философскими традициями, что положило начало отчетливо проявленной интеллектуальной традиции, обозначенной исследователями как «философский исмаилизм». *Даи* создали трактаты по различным экзотерическим и эзотерическим вопросам, параллельно развивая *тавил*, или эзотерическую экзегезу (аллегорическое толкование), которая стала отличительным признаком исмаилитской мысли. Ко второй половине V/XI века исмаилиты внесли по-настоящему важный вклад в исламскую мысль и культуру.

В начале XI в. в Египте наблюдался большой приток крайних шиитов с Востока. Среди них большую роль играл вначале бухарец Мухаммад (Наштакин) б. Исмаил ад-Дарази (ум. ок. 410/1019). Другим известным деятелем из крайних, был Хамза б. Али б. Ахмад ал-Лаббад (ум. после 434/1042), выходец из Хорасана.

Однако, среди египетских исмаилитов к тому времени прочно утвердилось умеренное направление. Для борьбы с экстремистами центральный штаб фатимидского *дава* в Каире в 404/1014 или чуть ранее вызвал иранского *даи* Хамид ад-Дина ал-Кирмани в Каир, где он написал несколько работ в опровержении экстремистских доктрин [31]. Впоследствии ал-Кирмани возвращается в Ирак, где он в 411/1020 закончил свою последнюю работу «Рахат ал-акл» («Успокоение разума») и поныне являющимся одним из важнейших источников по учению исмаилизма этого периода.

С конца XI в. кризис исмаилизма усугубляется. Его внешними проявлениями были религиозно-политические расколы. Первый из них произошел из-за наследования халифу Мустансиру (427-487/1036-1094), еще при жизни которого часть исмаилитов стояла за передачу имамата и халифата его старшему сыну Абу Мансуру Низару (437-488/1045-1095), а другая держала сторону младшего, седьмого сына Мустансира – Абу ал-Касиму Ахмаду Мустали (467-495/1074-1101). Мусталиты преобладали в Египте и представляли собой умеренное направление исмаилизма. Низариты были крайними, их учение, организация и методы действия имели существенные особенности [23:19].

Исмаилитское государство в Египте пало в 1171 г., но еще до этого в Иране возникло государство исмаилитов-низаритов. Основателем этого государства является ал-Хасан б. Али б. Мухаммад б. Джафар б. ал-Хусайн б. Мухаммад б. ас-Саббах ал-Химйари ал-Йамани (446-518/1054(5)-1124). В 1081 г. он провозгласил

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

учение «ад-дават ал-джадида» («новый призыв»), отличавшийся от фатимидского исмаилизма («дават ал-кадим») рядом новых элементов в доктрине и организации общины.

В 483/1090 г. Хасан б. Саббах овладел горной крепостью Аламут. Эта крепость стала его резиденцией. Исмаилиты очень быстро овладели многими крепостями, замками и укрепленными городками в горных местностях Ирана [20:293].

Низаритское государство не имело сплошной территории. Главные его владения находились в горных областях Эльбурса и Кухистана. Фактически руководил низаритами *даи* Хасан б. Саббах со своими энергичными учениками – раисом Музафаром Мустокфи и *даи* Кийа, по прозвищу Бузург Умид («Великая надежда») (ум. 532/1138). Формально, главой низаритов Ирана был *даи* даиев (*даи ад-дуат*) Ахмад (ум. 500/1107) сын Абд ал-Малика б. Атташа – учителя Хасана б. Саббаха, верховного исмаилитского *даи* в Иране [24:33-34]. Резиденция Ахмада располагалась в крепости Шахдиз, около столицы государства Сельджукидов Исфавана. Ахмад считался наместником «скрытого» имама из сыновей Низара.

Особенно благоприятная обстановка сложилась для исмаилитов в 90-х гг. XI в. в Сирии. Вскоре после захвата Аламута Хасан б. Саббах направил своих *даи* в Сирию. Деятельность исмаилитов началась в Халебе. Владелец Халеба Сельджукид Ридван б. Тутуш б. Алп Арслан (ум. 507/1113) покровительствовал исмаилитам. По словам Ибн ал-Джаузи «Ридван построил для них дом пропаганды, и он был первым, кто сделал это» [4:77].

После смерти Ридвана в 507/1113 г. халебская знать расправилась с исмаилитами [13:141]. Но разгром не прекратил их деятельность в Сирии [24:97-101; 26:200-201]. В 536/1141 г. сирийские исмаилиты взяли горную крепость Масийаф в Джебель-Ансарийа. Эта крепость надолго стала резиденцией их главы. Иногда исмаилиты заключали политические соглашения с крестоносцами и даже участвовали в их походах против мусульманских правителей. Жертвами исмаилитских *фидаи* становились как мусульмане, так и христиане.

Когда войска Салах ад-Дина осадили Масийаф, шейх сирийских исмаилитов Рашид ад-Дин Синан (564-588/1169-1192), при котором сирийские исмаилиты стали совершенно независимыми от Аламута, пошел на соглашение, гарантировавшем полную безопасность Салах ад-Дину [23:71-73].

Политика же египетских мамлюков по отношению к сирийским исмаилитам была жесткой и решительной. В 671/1272 г. мамлюкской армии сдались последние исмаилитские крепости. С этого времени

сирийские исмаилиты перестали играть какую-либо политическую роль.

Остановимся на учении и организации общины исмаилитов-низаритов. Они сократили число правил «внешней» экзотерической доктрины *захир* (т. е. ритуала и права), обязательных для адептов низших степеней. Иерархия у низаритов конца XI-середины XIII вв. строилась следующим образом (сверху вниз): *имам*; *даи ад-дуат*; *даи ал-кабир* («великий даи»); *рафик* («товарищ»); *ласик* («примкнувший»); *фидаи* («жертвующий жизнью [ради своего дела]»). Члены двух низших степеней знали только «внешнюю» (*захир*) доктрину секты и обязаны были слепо повиноваться высшим ее членам. Член второй степени – *ласик* приносил присягу имаму. Член третьей степени – *рафик* уже частично посвящался в тайны «внутренней» эзотерической доктрины (*батин*). Эти три степени считались низшими. Член четвертой степени, *да* и полностью посвящался во «внутреннюю» доктрину исмаилизма. Члены трех высших степеней: *даи*, *даи ал-кабир*, *даи ад-дуат* – представляли избранную верхушку секты; для них следование «внешнему» учению (молитвы, исполнение обрядов) и нормы шариата и элементарной морали считались необязательными. Высшая степень – *имам*, была недостижима ни для кого кроме потомков Али и Низара.

Масса рядовых членов секты обычно поднималась не выше второй степени. Под одними и теми же лозунгами пропаганда велась как среди низов, так и верхов общества, причем каждый раз, в зависимости от ситуации, в них вкладывались совершенно противоположные идеи и смысл. Именно поэтому учение исмаилитов было актуально, по словам аш-Шахрастани, «во все времена и на всех языках».

Низаритские *фидаи* убивали политических деятелей, активных врагов низаритов. Мотивы убийств всегда были политические [24:146-158]. Юноши, посланные для выполнения террористических актов, обычно потом сами погибали. Они, однако, были убеждены, что их «подвиги» во имя веры откроют им врата Рая [4:73]. И среди мусульман, и среди христиан существовало устойчивое мнение, будто низаритские главари, дабы подготовить юного *фидаи*, одурманивали его гашишем. Этого же мнения придерживались многие европейские ученые, основываясь на записках Марко Поло.

Практика политических убийств не вытекала из учения исмаилитов-низаритов. Терроризм не был также изобретением Хасана б. Саббаха. У ранних шиитов этот метод борьбы носил название «*джихад кафи*» (тайная война) и противопоставлялся открытой пограничной войне. Одна экстремистская шиитская группа

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

называлась «хуннак» (душител), ибо таков был излюбленный способ убийства у ее приверженцев. Тем не менее, ни одна из этих групп не придавала террористическим убийствам столь большого политического значения, которое они приобрели у низаритов [30:91]. Терроризм видимо был усвоен постепенно, как ответное средство борьбы против преследований со стороны враждебных низаритам правителей. Но со времени ас-Саббаха низаритский террор принял очень широкие размеры.

Со второй половины XII в. среди низаритов Ирана заметны две группировки; аристократическая и представляющая народные низы. На последнюю, попытался опереться Хасан II (557-561/1162-1166). 17 рамазана 559/8 августа 1164 г. он провозгласил наступление новой эры – конца мира и «дня воскресения из мертвых», иначе говоря дня «Страшного суда» [25:19-25]. Согласно исмаилитскому учению одни исмаилиты «воскресли» для новой жизни в «духовном раю» и отныне все внешнее (*захир*) учение с его намазами, обрядами и предписаниями шариата становилось необязательным и для массы верующих. Через полтора года Хасан II был убит. Сын Хасана II Мухаммад II (561-607/1166-1210) продолжил линию отца.

Тем временем низаритская верхушка уже стала опасаться активности рядовых членов. Эти настроения выразил сын и приемник Мухаммада II Хасан III (607-618/1210-1221), который под предлогом «возвращения к первоначальному исламу времени Пророка» снова объявил обязательным «внешнее» учение, выполнение предписаний шариата, уставные молитвы, посты, он восстановил мечети и давно прекращенные пятничные намазы с хутбой. Он сблизился с суннитами, приказал читать хутбу на имя аббасидского халифа ан-Насира (575-622/1180-1225) и послал свою мать в паломничество в Мекку. Этими действиями он заслужил у суннитов прозвище «Ноу-мусульман» («новый мусульманин») [24:202-207].

При Хасане III борьба внутри низаритской общины приняла очень острые формы. Хасан III был отравлен. После его смерти исмаилитское учение официально было восстановлено. Аристократическая верхушка, была готова подчиниться монгольским завоевателям, начавшим в то время завоевание Ирана; рядовые же исмаилиты стояли за «священную войну». Сын Хасана III Рукн ад-Дин Хуршах (653-654/1255-1256) по требованию монгольского завоевателя Ирана Хулагу-хана согласился подчиниться,

разрушить укрепления, выдать ключи от замков и сокровища, но не мог осуществить всего этого из-за сопротивления рядовых низаритов. Из-за предательства Рукн ад-Дина Аламут в 654/1256 г. был сдан Хулагу-хану. Он отослал Рукн ад-Дина в Монголию к великому хану Мункэ-каану (646-658/1248-1259), который приказал убить Хуршаха. Рядовые низариты продолжали борьбу еще в течение 20 лет.

Первые два столетия после падения Аламута представляют самый длительный «темный» период во всей истории исмаилитов. Многие аспекты их деятельности и интеллектуальной мысли в этот период все еще недостаточно изучены. После разгрома низаритского государства в Иране, исмаилиты оказались в чрезвычайно трудном положении. Община оказалась в раздробленном состоянии, ослабли связи между имамом и его последователями, широко использовался принцип «такийа». Низаритские имамы были вынуждены вести скрытую жизнь под видом суфийских пиров. В «Истории исмаилизма» Фидаи имеются интересные сведения о том, что последний аламутский владыка Рукн ад-Дин Хуршах не был убит, а нашел убежище в Тавризе, где в присутствии глав секты передал права на имамат своему сыну Шамс ад-Дин Мухаммаду (ум. 710/1310), которого иногда ошибочно отождествляли с известным персидским поэтом-мистиком Шамс-и Табризи [11:362]. По преданию, после смерти своего отца Шамс в одежде суфия обходил свою разгромленную паству, укрепляя веру [27:19]<sup>2</sup>.

Низаритские имамы, опасаясь преследования монголов, были вынуждены вести скрытую жизнь. Об их местопребывании знал лишь очень узкий круг наиболее приближенных лиц. Всякие связи с исмаилитскими общинами были прекращены. Исмаилиты-низариты Бадахшана, Индии, Афганистана, Сирии и т. д. на протяжении XIII-XV вв. не знали о местонахождении имама. Отсутствие традиционного единого центра привело к «идеологическим шатаниям» внутри исмаилитской общины и к появлению новых ответвлений. Так, приблизительно в 710/1310 г., в результате диспута о наследнике имама Шамс ад-Дин Мухаммада, произошел раскол низаритских имамов и их последователей на две ветви – «мухаммадшахи» («муминшахи») и «касимшахи» [8:166-167; 32:57-79]. С установлением власти Сафавидов в Иране (907/1502) и объединением страны начинается постепенное возрождение исмаилитского движения, обычно называемое в

<sup>2</sup> Скорей всего здесь закралась некоторая путаница. Возможно Фидаи совместил отдельные моменты биографии наследника Рукн ад-Дин Хуршаха Шамс ад-Дина Мухаммада с известным по легендарным исмаилитским рассказам Шамс-и

Табризи, духовного наставника Мавлана Джалал ад-Дина Руми [21:247-256], или с низаритским поэтом Хакимом Сад ад-Дином б. Шамс ад-Дином, более известного как Низари Кухистани [3:272]).

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

современной науке «анджуданское возрождение» (сер. IX/XV-конец XII/XVIII вв.). В дальнейшем низаритские имамы восстановили центр имамата в Анджудане, затем перенесли его в Махаллат (около г. Кума). Им удалось восстановить прерванные связи с низаритскими общинами в Индии, Афганистане, Сирии и других местах. Уже в правление Зендов (1163-1208/1750-1794) и Каджаров (1209-1343/1794-1925) исмаилитские имамы активно участвовали в политической жизни Ирана. В частности, имам Шах-Халилаллах III (1195-1231/1780-1817) имел хорошие отношения с Фатхали-шахом Каджаром (1212-1250/1794-1834). Фатхали-шах выдал свою дочь за его сына – Хасан Али-шаха (1201-1298/1787-1881). Он был назначен правителем Кума и получил титул Ага-хан («господин», «хозяин»), ставший наследственным титулом имамов исмаилитов. Позже он был назначен генерал-губернатором провинции Керман. Ага-хан I вступил в конфликт с наследником Фатх Али-шаха Мухаммад-шахом (1250-1264/1834-1848), который сместил Ага-хана I с поста генерал-губернатора Кермана и подверг преследованию. В 1255/1840 г. Хасан Али попытался совершить переворот и силой захватить трон, но неудачно и покинул Иран. В 1257/1841 г. он вместе со свитой перешел афганскую границу и прибыл в город Кандагар [8:202]. Из Афганистана он вскоре переехал в Индию и, обосновался в Бомбее в 1265/1848 г., где основал новый центр имамата исмаилитов-низаритов.

Перенос центра имамата из Ирана в Индию сыграл важную роль в развитии исмаилизма. Начинается новый период в его истории. В Британской Индии Ага-хан I продолжал активно сотрудничать с английскими властями [18:142].

«Бомбейский период» продолжался почти 30 лет, и в течение этого времени Ага-хану удалось объединить вокруг себя многочисленные разрозненные низаритские общины. Наиболее организованной и богатой общиной низаритов в Индии была община исмаилитов-ходжа. В среде этой общины сразу же возникли серьезные разногласия. В 1281/1866 г. бомбейский суд вынес приговор в пользу Ага-хана I и закрепил его духовные и светские привилегии, признал юридическим собственником всего общинного имущества джамаата Бомбея. Ходжа были признаны особой общиной исмаилитов, жизнь и организация которой не регулируется мусульманским правом [16:159-166; 17:24].

Преемники Ага-хана I в полной мере учитывали уроки судебных процессов 1862-1866 гг. и реформаторские тенденции в общине ходжа. В 1885 г. Ага-ханом III стал Ага Султан Мухаммад-шах (1294-1376/1877-1957), внук Ага-хана I. Он сыграл большую роль в укреплении низаритской общины. Особое значение он

придавал проведению социально-экономических преобразований.

Что же касается мусталитов, то после падения Фатимидов их религиозный центр, более чем на 500 лет переместился из Египта в Йемен, где уже существовала община мусталитов-таййибитов – сторонников верховной власти ат-Таййиба, сына фатимидского халифа ал-Амира [22:134-135]. Таййибиты создали самостоятельную организацию во главе с проповедником (*ад-дау ал-мутлак*). Вскоре после смерти в 524/1130 году ал-Амира, сына и наследника ал-Мустали, исмаилиты-мусталиты разделились на фракции хафизитов и таййибитов. Хафизиты, признававшие поздних Фатимидов своими имамами, сошли с исторической сцены после падения Фатимидов в 567/1171 году. Таййибиты, которые после ал-Амира не имели явленного имама, обрели постоянный оплот в Йемене. С тех пор таййибитами руководил главный *дау*. К концу X/XVI века таййибиты, не пришедшие к единому мнению по вопросу о правомочности наследования должности *дау*, разделились на *дауди* и *сулаймани*. К этому времени индийские таййибиты, известные как «бохра» [15:68-73] и принадлежавшие, в основном, к ветви *дауди*, значительно превзошли *сулаймани*, проживавших в Йемене. Между ними нет никаких догматических расхождений. Таййибиты уделяли большое внимание сохранению интеллектуальных и литературных традиций фатимидских исмаилитов, а также сбережению значительного исмаилитского литературного наследия этого периода. Таййибитские *дау* Йемена оставили значительную по объему исмаилитскую литературу. Таййибиты считаются сегодня меньшинством среди исмаилитов.

## Conclusion

Таким образом, в начале раскола шиизма исмаилиты придерживались почти всех ранних шиитских взглядов, но в последующем они внесли свои понятия в теорию имамата. Исмаилитская теория иерархии духовных особ также содержит особую систему. В ней суммирован весь смысл исмаилитской доктрины, заключающейся в непрерывности имамата, увенчивающего иерархию. В каком положении не находился бы исмаилизм, разгромлен ли он был монголами, преследуем ли суннитами, учение об имамате и иерархии исмаилизма и сама иерархия сохранялись. Теория заключалась, прежде всего, в установлении непрерывности линии наследования имамов и подчиненной им иерархии проповедников. В исмаилизме, в отличие от шиизма, имамат представляется реальной политической организацией, как говорят сами исмаилиты, они «не дожидаются у пещеры

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

появления Махди». Линия имамов не прекращена великим сатром. Исмаилиты верят, что имама существует и будет существовать до Страшного суда, куда явится имам уже не в виде имама, а в

виде «казия», потребует отчета о деяниях человечества и каждому воздаст по его заслугам.

## References:

1. al'-Kirmani Khamid ad-Din (1995). *Uspokoenie razuma (Rakhat al'-akl')* / Per. s arab., vved. i komment. A. V. Smirnova. Moscow: Ladomir.
2. An-Naubakhti al-Khasan ibn Musa (1973). *Shiitskie sekty*. Per. s arab. i komment. S.M.Prozorova. Moscow: Nauka.
3. Bayburdi, C. G. (1966). *Zhizn' i tvorchestvo Nizari – persidskogo poeta*. Moscow: Nauka.
4. Belyaev, E. A. (1957). *Musul'manskoe sektantstvo*. Moscow: Vostochnaya literatura.
5. Bertel's, A. E. (1959). *Nasir-i Khosrov i ismailizm*. Moscow: Vostochnaya literatura.
6. Bertel's, E. E. (1960). *Istoriya persidsko-tadzhikskoy literatury*. Bertel's E.E. Izbrannyye trudy... V 5-ti tomakh. Moscow: Vostochnaya literatura, T.I.
7. Gryunebaum, G. E. (1986). *Klassicheskiy islam*. Moscow: Nauka.
8. Daftari, F. (2004). *Kratkaya istoriya ismailizma: Traditsii musul'manskoy obshchiny*. Moscow: Ladomir.
9. Daftari, F. (2006). *Traditsii ismailizma v srednie veka*. Moscow: Ladomir.
10. Zakhoder, B. N. (1940). *Mukhammed Nakhshabi. K istorii karmatskogo dvizheniya v Sredney Azii v X veke*. Uchenye zapiski MGU. Moscow: Vyp.41.
11. Ivanov, V. A. (1917). *Ismailitskie rukopisi Aziatskogo Muzeya (Sobranie I.Zarubina, 1916 g.)*. *Izvestiya Akademii nauk. Petrograd, Ser. VI. T. 11. Vyp. 6*.
12. (1991). *Islam. Entsiklopedicheskiy spravochnik*. Moscow: Nauka.
13. Kamal ad-Din (1990). *Slivki snyatyie s istorii Khaleba*. Semenova L.A. *Iz istorii srednevekovoy Sirii. Sel'dzhukskiy period*. Moscow: Nauka.
14. Kolesnikov, A. I. (1988). *Ideologiya mazdakizma i narodnye dvizheniya VIII-IX vv. v Irane*. *Obshchestvennye dvizheniya i ikh ideologiya v do burzhuaznykh obshchestvakh Azii*. Moscow: Nauka.
15. Levin, S. F. (1974). *Kto takie ismaility-bokhra. Nauka i religiya, Moscow, № 6*.
16. Levin, S. F. (1962). *Reformatorskoe dvizhenie v indiyaskoy torgovoy obshchine ismailitov-khodzha v 1825-1866 gg. Kratkie soobshcheniya Instituta narodov Azii AN SSSR, Moscow, № 51*.
17. Levin, S. F. (1964). *Torgovaya kasta khodzha (iz istorii musul'manskoy burzhuazii Indii i Pakistana)*. Avtoref. dis. Na sois. kand. ist. nauk. Moscow: INA AN SSSR.
18. Malysheva, L. B. (1977). *Ismaility. Voprosy istorii*. Moscow, № 2.
19. Petrushevskiy, I. P. (1970). *Dvizhenie mazdakitov v epokhu gospodstva islama. Narody Azii i Afriki, Moscow, №5*.
20. Petrushevskiy, I. P. (1966). *Islam v Irane v VII-XV vekakh. Kurs lektsiy*. L.: Izd. Leningradskogo Universiteta.
21. Semenov, A. A. (1915). *Sheykh Dzhelal ad-Din Rumi po predstavleniyam shugnanskikh ismailitov*. *Zapiski vostochnogo otdeleniya Ruskogo arkhologicheskogo obshchestva. – SPb.. T. XXII*.
22. Semenova, L. A. (1974). *Iz istorii fatimidskogo Egipta*. Moscow: Nauka.
23. Semenova, L. A. (1966). *Salakh ad-Din i mamlyuki v Egipte*. Moscow: Nauka.
24. Stroeveva, L. V. (1978). *Gosudarstvo ismailitov v Irane v XI - XIII vv*. Moscow: Nauka.
25. Stroeveva, L. V. (1960). *Den' voskreseniya iz mertvykh» i ego sotsial'naya sushchnost'*. *Kratkie soobshcheniya Instituta vostokovedeniya AN SSSR. Moskva-Leningrad, Vyp. XXXVIII*.
26. Usama, B. M. (1958). *Kniga nazidaniya*. Per. M.A.Sal'e. Moscow: Vostochnaya literatura.
27. Fidai Khurasani (1959). *Kitab bi khidayat al-muminin at-talibin*. Po tadzh. rukop. izdal, predis. i primech. snabdil A.A.Semenov. Moscow: Vostochnaya literatura.
28. Fil'shtinskiy, I. M. (2005). *Khalifat pod vlast'yu dinastii Omeyadov (661-750)*. Moscow: Severoprint.
29. Fil'shtinskiy, I. M. (2006). *Istoriya arabov i khalifata (750-1517 gg.)*. Moscow: Vostok-Zapad.
30. Khodzhsan, M. D. (2004). *Orden assasinov (Bor'ba rannikh nizaritov ismailitov s islamskim mirom)*. SPb.: Evraziya.



<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

31. Daftary, F. (2003). *Hamid al-Din al-Kirmani // The Internet Encyclopedia of Philosophy / J.Fieser*. Retrieved 2019, from <http://www.utm.edu/research/iep/k/kirmani.htm>
32. Ivanov, W. (1938). Forgotten Branch of the Ismailis. *Journal of Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*. London.
33. Ivanow, W. (1946). *The Alleged founder of Ismailism*. Bombay.
34. (2004). *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*. Leiden. E.J. Brill, Vol. XII.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

### International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



#### SECTION 9. Chemistry and chemical technology.

**Aleksandr Nikolaevich Baklanov**  
Ukrainian Engineering and Pedagogical Academy,  
Doctor of chemical sciences, Professor,  
Head of the Department of Occupational Health and  
Environmental Safety, Ukraine  
[baklanov\\_oleksandr@meta.ua](mailto:baklanov_oleksandr@meta.ua)

**Larisa Vladimirovna Baklanova**  
Ukrainian Engineering and Pedagogical Academy,  
Candidate of chemical sciences, Docent,  
Head of the Department of Occupational Health and  
Environmental Safety, Ukraine  
[baklanovalarisa@ukr.net](mailto:baklanovalarisa@ukr.net)

## SOLUTION TO THE SAFETY PROBLEMS OF ARTERIAL HYPERTENSION PATIENTS. DEVELOPMENT OF SPECIAL SALT MIXTURE

**Abstract:** The proposed solution to the problem of the safety of patients with hypertension. Developed a special salt mixture. The salt mixture consists of the following components: sodium chloride in the form of "Extra" table salt pounded to a dust-like state, 40–50%, potassium sulfate 7–10%; magnesium sulfate 15–18%; dry dill - 18–20%, dry tea 9–10%, calendula 1–2%. The special salt mixture has a low content of sodium chloride, a light pleasant dill-hourly taste, contains iodine in the form of calendula, does not cake for 12 months, the salinity corresponding to the salinity of ordinary table salt. It is recommended for clinical nutrition of patients with hypertension instead of the usual table salt.

**Key words:** hypertension, Extra salt, potassium sulfate, magnesium sulfate, dried dill, dry garlic, calendula.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Baklanov, A. N., & Baklanova L. V. (2019). Solution to the safety problems of arterial hypertension patients. Development of special salt mixture. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 145-150.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-15> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.15>

#### РЕШЕНИЕ ПРОБЛЕМ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ БОЛЬНЫХ АРТЕРИАЛЬНОЙ ГИПЕРТЕНЗИЕЙ. РАЗРАБОТКА СПЕЦИАЛЬНОЙ СОЛЕВОЙ СМЕСИ

**Аннотация:** Предложено решение проблемы безопасности больных гипертензией. Разработана специальная солевая смесь. Солевая смесь состоит из следующих компонентов: хлорид натрия в виде растертой до пылеподобного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» 40–50 %, сульфат калия 7–10 %; сульфат магния 15–18 %; сухой укроп – 18–20 %, сухой чеснок 9–10%, календула 1–2 %. Специальная солевая смесь имеет пониженное содержание хлорида натрия, легкий приятный укропно-чесночный привкус, содержит йод в виде календулы, не слеживается на протяжении 12 месяцев, соленость, соответствующую солености обычной поваренной соли. Рекомендуется для лечебного питания больных гипертензией вместо обычной поваренной соли.

**Ключевые слова:** гипертензия, поваренная соль «Экстра», сульфат калия, сульфат магния, сухой укроп, сухой чеснок, календула.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Введение.

Избыточное потребление поваренной соли является одной из важнейших причин развития гипертензии. Причем, вредное воздействие оказывает основной компонент поваренной соли – хлорид натрия, содержание которого составляет в поваренной соли 94-99 % [1-3]. Рекомендуемое количество поваренной соли для употребления в пищу составляет 5-6 г в сутки. Более 60 % населения развитых стран употребляет в сутки 8-12 г поваренной соли. Гипертензией страдают 25-60 % населения [1]. В связи с чем, для профилактики сердечнососудистых заболеваний, вызванных избыточным количеством употребляемого хлорида натрия, применяют различные солевые смеси с пониженным содержанием хлорида натрия, содержащие различные добавки для улучшения функционирования сердечнососудистой системы [4].

Нами была разработана рецептура солевая смеси, содержащая следующие компоненты, мас. %: поваренную соль 60-70, сульфат калия 5-10, сульфат магния 5-10, укропное эфирное масло или эфирное масло лавра благородного - 10, крахмал водорастворимый - 10. Данная солевая смесь выпускалась Опытным-экспериментальным предприятием Украинского научно-исследовательского института соляной промышленности (ранее – Всесоюзный научно-исследовательский институт соляной промышленности) в 1984-1986 г.г. и была предназначена для лечебного питания больных гипертензией. Однако недостатки данной солевой смеси – недостаточный срок хранения - 4 месяца из-за окисления эфирного масла кислородом воздуха и слеживаемость продукта привели к прекращению ее выпуска [5].

Описана ароматизированная солевая смесь, которая содержит следующие компоненты, мас. %: соль поваренная пищевая - 45-48, соль морская пищевая - 45-48, сушеные измельченные водоросли Нори и Комбу в равных частях - 4-10. Недостатками такой солевой смеси является невозможность ее использования для лечебного питания больных гипертензией из-за большого количества хлорида натрия, а также недостаточный срок хранения - до 6 месяцев вследствие слеживаемости продукта [6].

Наибольшее распространение получила ароматизированная поваренная соль – «Адыгейская», содержащая следующие компоненты, мас. %: соль поваренная пищевая 81,5-93,0, чеснок - 4,5-9,5, лекарственные травы 2,5-9,0 [7]. Данная ароматизированная поваренная соль используется как при приготовлении пищи так и для подсаливания готовых блюд. Наличие чеснока и лекарственных трав обеспечивает данной ароматизированной соли ароматический,

лечебный и профилактический эффекты. Недостатками данной соли является отсутствие в ее составе солей калия и магния, которые являются основными компонентами поваренной соли с антигипертензивными свойствами, а также наличие значительного количества хлорида натрия 81,5-93,0%, что не дает возможности использовать данную соль для лечебного питания больных с артериальной гипертензией [7].

Была разработана и выпускалась Опытным-экспериментальным предприятием Украинского научно-исследовательского института соляной промышленности в 1986-1987 г.г. ароматизированная солевая смесь, содержащая следующие компоненты, мас. %: хлорид натрия 60-70, сульфат калия 5-10, сульфат магния 5-10, сухой укроп 10, крахмал водорастворимый - 10. Данная ароматизированная солевая смесь была предназначена для лечебного питания больных гипертензией. Однако, уменьшение содержания хлорида натрия в составе ароматизированной поваренной соли по сравнению с обычной поваренной солью, привело к увеличению количества потребляемой поваренной соли для достижения необходимой солености пищи и как результат – к уменьшению лечебного действия данной ароматизированной поваренной соли [8].

Нами была предложена специальная солевая смесь с пониженным содержанием хлорида натрия, состоящая из следующих компонентов хлорид натрия в виде быстрорастворимой чешуйчатой поваренной соли 40-50 %, цитрат калия 20-25 %; цитрат магния 20-25 %; сухой укроп – 10 %. Солевая смесь не слеживалась на протяжении 18 месяцев и была предназначена для лечебного питания больных гипертензией. Однако, высокая стоимость чешуйчатой поваренной соли, цитратов магния и калия, отсутствие специальных сосудостроительных компонентов не позволили заказчику – Украинскому научно-исследовательскому институту соляной промышленности начать промышленное производство такой солевой смеси [9].

Предлагаемая работа посвящена разработке и изучению рецептуры специальной солевой смеси для использования в питании больных гипертензией вместо обычной поваренной соли.

### Экспериментальная часть.

Изучалась специальная солевая смесь состоящая из следующих компонентов: хлорид натрия в виде растертой до пылеподобного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» 40-50 %, сульфат калия 7-10 %; сульфат магния 15-18 %; сухой укроп – 18-20 %, сухой чеснок 9-10%, календула 1-2 %.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Солевая смесь состоит из следующих компонентов: хлорид натрия в виде растертой до пылеподобного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» 40-50 %, сульфат калия 7-10 %; сульфат магния 15-18 %; сухой укроп – 18-20 %, сухой чеснок 9-10%, календула 1-2 %.

Использование хлорида натрия в виде растертой до пылеподобного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» обусловлено следующим: растертая до пылеподобного состояния поваренная соль «Экстра» при условии предварительного смешивания с сухим укропом и чесноком (по приведенному выше пропорциональному количеству) имеет скорость растворения, примерно, в два раза выше обычной поваренной соли и, примерно, вдвое более соленый вкус чем обычной поваренной соли «Экстра». Предварительное смешивание растертой до пылеподобного состояния поваренной соли сорта «Экстра» с сухими укропом и чесноком затрудняет образование конгломератов и слипание частиц поваренной соли и как результат - повышает скорость растворения, что в свою очередь приводит к увеличению эффекта солёности. То есть, количество поваренной соли для достижения той же солёности при использовании данной смеси может быть уменьшено. Кроме того, смесь перетертой поваренной соли сорта «Экстра» с сухими укропом и чесноком (по приведенному выше пропорциональному количеству) не слеживается течение не менее 12 месяцев, то есть не требует введения дополнительных антислеживающих добавок [10].

Сульфат калия повышает работоспособность и остроту мышления способствует нормальному течению обмена веществ в организме, регулирует сердечный ритм, предупреждая возникновение аритмий. Сульфат магния активно участвует в обменных процессах стимулирует образование белков оказывает миорелаксирующее действие (способствует расслаблению мышц), нормализует пульс расширяет сосуды, снижает артериальное давление, уменьшает вероятность тромбообразования. Количество сульфатов калия и магния в солевой смеси с пониженным содержанием хлорида натрия способна улучшить состояние людей больных гипертензией при использовании рекомендованного количества соли - 5-6 граммов в день и в то же время исключается возможность кумуляции и нежелательных эффектов, таких как гиперкалемия [10, 11].

Сухой укроп в количестве не менее 10% уменьшает слеживаемость поваренной соли на 50-80% в зависимости от условий хранения, то есть действует как антислеживающая добавка. Кроме того, укроп вводится в качестве вкусовой и ароматизирующей добавки, обладает целебными

свойствами для всего организма человека. Укроп положительно влияет на работу сердца, укрепляет и лечит сосуды, расширяет кровеносные сосуды, уменьшая артериальное давление. Способствует очищению сосудов от вредных жиров и холестерина, улучшая кровоток. Укроп способствует улучшению состояния людей больных гипертензией, улучшает остроту зрения [1, 11].

Сухой чеснок в количестве не менее 10% также уменьшает слеживаемость поваренной соли. Эффективность чеснока как антислеживающей добавки усиливается в смеси с сухим укропом [10, 11]. Кроме того, чеснок вводится в качестве вкусовой и ароматизирующей добавки, имеет значительное количество фитонцидов и является профилактическим средством против вирусных заболеваний. Также чеснок в приведенной выше количества положительно влияет на работу сердца, улучшает состояние сосудов, способствует очищению от вредных жиров и холестерина [11].

Календула содержит витамины А и С, углеводы, растительные протеины и минералы - йод, кальций, железо и фосфор. Известно, что продукты, приготовленные с добавлением календулы имеют первостепенное значение для людей, которые испытывают недостаток йода, страдающих повышенным уровнем холестерина, а также слабой работой иммунной системы. То есть данная добавка способствует повышению иммунитета, выносливости организма, повышается эффективность физической и умственной деятельности особенно больных гипертензией [1, 2].

Смешивание компонентов солевой смеси выполняли с использованием лабораторного смесителя типа ЛС-23 компании «Опытный экспериментальный машиностроительный завод Украинского научно-исследовательского института соляной промышленности». Испытание образцов солевой смеси на слеживаемость выполняли известным эксикаторным методом. При этом образец смеси считался несслежившимся при сопротивлении сжатию менее 0,3 кг/см<sup>2</sup> [12]. Органолептические испытания проводили по пятибалльной шкале слепым методом по методике Украинского научно-исследовательского института соляной промышленности [12]. Испытания были проведены на нижеприведенных сериях проб специальной смеси, количество проб в каждой серии - 3.

*1 серия проб специальной солевой смеси.* 40 г хлорида натрия в виде растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» смешивают с 20 г сухого укропа, с 10 г сухого чеснока, с 2 г календулы, с 10 г сульфата калия, и с 18 г сульфата магния. Для тщательного распределения в смеси компонентов, перемешивания проводят в

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

несколько этапов, но оно должно быть не менее трех этапным. Сначала смешивают 10 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 10 г сухого укропа, 10 г сухого чеснока, 2 г календулы. Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 30 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 5 г сульфата калия, 8 г сульфата магния и 10 г сухого укропа и перемешивают. Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 5 г сульфата калия, 10 г сульфата магния и перемешивают.

*2 серия проб специальной солевой смеси.* 45 г хлорида натрия в виде растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» смешивают с 19 г сухого укропа, с 9 г сухого чеснока, с 2 г календулы, с 8 г сульфата калия, и с 17 г сульфата магния.

Для тщательного распределения в смеси компонентов, перемешивания проводят в несколько этапов, но оно должно быть не менее трех этапным. Сначала смешивают 10 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 10 г сухого укропа, 9 г сухого чеснока, 2 г календулы.

Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 30 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 5 г сульфата калия, 7 г сульфата магния и 9 г сухого укропа, и перемешивают.

Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 5 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 3 г сульфата калия, 10 г сульфата магния и перемешивают.

*3 серия проб специальной солевой смеси.* 50 г хлорида натрия в виде растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» смешивают с 18 г сухого укропа, с 9 г сухого чеснока, с 1 г календулы, с 7 г сульфата калия, и с 15 г сульфата магния.

Для тщательного распределения в смеси компонентов, перемешивания проводят в несколько этапов, но оно должно быть не менее трех этапным. Сначала смешивают 10 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 10 г сухого укропа, 9 г сухого чеснока, 1 г календулы.

Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 30 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 7 г сульфата калия, 5 г сульфата магния и 8 г сухого укропа и перемешивают.

Затем к полученной таким образом смеси добавляют 10 г растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра», 10 г сульфата магния и перемешивают.

Для личительных испытаний использовали наиболее распространенную промышленно выпускаемую солевую смесь «Адыгейская» [7]. При этом смешивали для первой серии проб: 68 г садовой поваренной соли, 20 г хлорида калия и 12 г сульфата магния; для второй серии проб: 61 г садовой поваренной сол, 22 г хлорида калия и 17 г сульфата магния; для третьей серии проб: 56 г садовой поваренной соли, 29 г хлорида калия и 15 г сульфата магния.

### Результаты и обсуждение

В табл. 1 и 2 приведены результаты сличительных испытаний рецептур предлагаемой специальной солевой смеси для больных гипертонией с ароматизированной поваренной солью «Адыгейская». Как следует из результатов опытов приведенных в табл. 1 специальная солевая смесь с пониженным содержанием натрия хлорида имеет срок хранения 12 месяцев, а ароматизированная поваренная соль «Адыгейская» - до 6 месяцев в зависимости от особенностей рецептуры.

Таблица 1. Сравнение слеживаемости солевых смесей: *предлагаемой рецептуры и «Адыгейской»*

№ пробы	Сопротивление сжатию, кг/см <sup>2</sup> через период времени (месяцы)					
	1	2	3	10	12	13
Солевая смесь по предлагаемой рецептуре						
1	*_	*_	0,08	0,17	0,27	0,60
1	*_	*_	0,08	0,16	0,26	0,61
1	*_	*_	0,09	0,17	0,27	0,61
2	*_	*_	0,11	0,18	0,28	0,64
2	*_	*_	0,11	0,18	0,28	0,64
2	*_	*_	0,10	0,18	0,28	0,64
3	*_	*_	0,12	0,19	0,29	0,68
3	*_	*_	0,12	0,19	0,29	0,69
3	*_	*_	0,12	0,18	0,28	0,69

**Impact Factor:**

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Солевая смесь «Адыгейская»						
1	0,10	0,19	0,40	0,98	1,45	1,76
1	0,10	0,20	0,41	1,03	1,45	1,78
1	0,10	0,19	0,40	1,04	1,43	1,77
2	0,14	0,22	0,44	1,10	1,57	1,83
2	0,14	0,23	0,44	1,11	1,58	1,84
2	0,15	0,22	0,45	1,12	1,57	1,84
3	0,18	0,27	0,53	1,19	1,63	1,97
3	0,17	0,28	0,54	1,19	1,62	1,98
3	0,18	0,29	0,55	1,19	1,60	1,98

\* – Признаков слеживаемости продукта не найдено

**Таблица 2. Сравнение вкусовых качеств солевых смесей: предлагаемой рецептуры и «Адыгейской»**

Номер пробы соли	Результаты органолептических испытаний ароматизированных солевых смесей методом слепого контроля по пятибальной шкале [10]		
	Солевая смесь «Адыгейская»	Предлагаемая солевая смесь	Обычная поваренная соль
1	Вкус горько-соленый с горьким посторонним прикусом 3,0±0,05	Вкус соленый с приятным сильным привкусом укропа и чеснока 3,5±0,03	* Вкус соленый без постороннего привкуса 4,8±0,05
2	Вкус горько-соленый с сильным горьким посторонним прикусом 2,8±0,05	Вкус соленый с приятным легким привкусом укропа и чеснока 3,8±0,03	** Вкус соленый без постороннего привкуса 5,0±0,02
3	Вкус горько-соленый с очень сильным горьким посторонним прикусом 2,7±0,05	Вкус соленый с приятным легким привкусом укропа и чеснока 4,0±0,03	*** Вкус соленый с легким посторонним привкусом 4,7±0,05

\* Поваренная соль каменная, ГП «Артемсоль», р. № 4, \*\* Поваренная соль «Экстра» Славянская соледобывающая компания, \*\*\* Поваренная соль бассейновая Генического солезавода

Таким образом, эксперимент показал, что использование предлагаемой специальной солевой смеси, содержащей хлорид натрия, сульфат калия, сульфат магния, календулу, сухой чеснок и сухой укроп с последующим соотношением компонентов, мас. %:

хлорид натрия в виде растертой до пылевидного состояния поваренной соли «Экстра» 40-50;

сухой укроп - 18-20;

сухой чеснок 9-10%;

календула 1-2;

сульфат калия 7-10;

сульфат магния 15-18.

позволяет увеличить срок хранения соли с 2 до 12 месяцев и приблизить ее солености к солености обычной поваренной соли, а также придать ей приятный привкус укропа и чеснока. Кроме того, наличие в ее составе календулы позволит улучшить умственную нагрузку и зрение, а наличие сухого чеснока повысить устойчивость к вирусным заболеваниям и улучшить состояние сосудов.

## References:

1. Agayev, A. A. (2011). Vliyaniye zlupotrebleniya povarennoy sol'yu na zabolevayemost' naseleniya gipertoniyey. *Svet me-ditsiny i biologii*, № 2, pp.88-90.
2. Volkov, V. S., Nilova, S. A., & Poselyugina, O. B. (2009). O sootnoshenii povyshennogo potrebleniya povarennoy soli i izmeneniya ritma sutochnogo arterial'nogo davleniya u bol'nykh

**Impact Factor:**

**ISRA (India) = 3.117**  
**ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829**  
**GIF (Australia) = 0.564**  
**JIF = 1.500**

**SIS (USA) = 0.912**  
**PIHII (Russia) = 0.156**  
**ESJI (KZ) = 8.716**  
**SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667**

**ICV (Poland) = 6.630**  
**PIF (India) = 1.940**  
**IBI (India) = 4.260**  
**OAJI (USA) = 0.350**

- arterial'noy gipertoniye. *Kardiologiya*, 70, № 1, 71-78.
3. Goloperov, I. V., Belova, E. A., Baklanov, A. N., & Baklanova, L. V. (2017). solving the problems of safety in the production of iodied salt. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (48): 70-75.
  4. Furman, A. A., Bel'dy, M. P., & Sokolov, I. D. (1989). *Povarennaya sol'. Proizvodstvo i primeneniye v khimicheskoy pro-myshlennosti.* (p.272). Moscow: Khimiya.
  5. Baklanov, A. N., Baklanova, L. V., Golik, V. B. (1987). Aromatizirovannaya solevaya smes' s efirnym maslom lavra blagorodnogo. *Trudy VNIIsol'*, 34, № 3, 45-51.
  6. Parkhomets, Y. V. (2013). *Sposob polucheniya aromatizirovannoy povarennoy soli. Patent Ukrainy na poleznuyu mo-del' № 79691*, A 23 L. Opubl. 25.04.2013, Byul.№ 8.
  7. Khuazhev, A. Z., & Khuazhev, Z. A. (2005). *Adygeyskaya sol'. Patent RF № 2 251346*, A 23 L. Opubl. 10.05.2005, Byul.№ 13.
  8. Baklanov, A. N., Baklanova, L. V., & Golik, V. B. (2005). Aromatizirovannaya solevaya smes' s sukhim ukropom. *Trudy VNIIsol'*, 34, № 3, pp. 55-63.
  9. Goloperov, I. V., Baklanov, A. N., & Baklanova, L. V. (2019). Improving the safety of the aromated salt mixture. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 04 (72), 48-53.
  10. Baklanov, A. N., Avdeyenko, A. P., Chmilenko, F. A., & Baklanova, L. V. (2011). *Analiticheskaya khimiya povarennoy soli i rassolov.* (p.281). Kramatorsk: DGMA.
  11. Gromova, O. A., Torshin, I. Y., & Grishina, T. R. (2010). Mirovoy opyt primeneniya tsitrata magniya v meditsine. *Trud-nyy patsiyent*, 8, № 8, 20-27.
  12. Pyshkova, E. P., Dmitriev, P. A., & Baklanov, A. N. (2019). Increase the safety of iodinated cooked salt. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 05 (73), 432-438.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIIHЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



### SECTION 4. Computer science, computer engineering and automation.

UDC 681.3.012+681.3-192

**Yurij Konstantinovich Dimitriev**  
Rzhanov Institute of Semiconductor Physics  
Senior Scientist,  
Advanced Doctor in Engineering Sci.,  
Leading Researcher,  
Siberian Branch RAS, Russia  
[dim3737@yandex.ru](mailto:dim3737@yandex.ru)

## CONDITIONS OF LOCAL SELF-DIAGNOSIS AND EFFICIENCY OF THEIR USE FOR DIFFERENT MODELS OF UNRELIABLE TESTS

**Abstract:** In the framework of the graph-theoretical model, self-diagnostics of multiprocessor computing systems at the system level is studied when multiple failures occur and when unreliable tests are used. The problem of local self-diagnostics is solved — the problem of identifying the state of the system modules based on a comparative analysis of the results of mutual testing of modules located in a limited neighborhood of it (the testing subgraph). For an exhaustive group of models of unreliable tests, the conditions of local identification of the system modules in the selected “typical” structures of testing subgraphs, invariant to the structure of the full diagnostic graph of the system, are proved.

**Key words:** Local self-diagnosis on system level, theoretical-graph diagnostic model, models of unreliable test, Boolean consistency functions, significance of consistency functions.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Dimitriev, Y. K. (2019). Conditions of local self-diagnosis and efficiency of their use for different models of unreliable tests. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 151-163.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-16> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.16>

### УСЛОВИЯ ЛОКАЛЬНОГО САМОДИАГНОСТИРОВАНИЯ И ЭФФЕКТИВНОСТЬ ИХ ИСПОЛЬЗОВАНИЯ ДЛЯ РАЗНЫХ МОДЕЛЕЙ НЕНАДЕЖНЫХ ТЕСТОВ

**Аннотация:** В рамках теоретико-графовой модели изучается самодиагностирование многопроцессорных вычислительных систем на системном уровне при возникновении кратных отказов и при использовании ненадежных тестов. Решается задача локального самодиагностирования — задача идентификации состояния модулей системы на основе сопоставительного анализа исходов взаимного тестирования модулей, находящихся в ограниченной окрестности от него (подграф тестирования). Для исчерпывающей группы моделей ненадежных тестов доказаны условия локальной идентификации модулей системы в выделенных “типичных” структурах подграфа тестирования, инвариантных к структуре полного диагностического графа системы.

**Ключевые слова:** локальная диагностика на системном уровне, теоретико-графовая диагностическая модель, модели ненадежного теста, булевы функции совместности, значимость функций совместности.

#### 1. Introduction

Расширение области практического применения многопроцессорных вычислительных систем (ВС), в том числе в необслуживаемых системах управления или в системах управления с ограничениями на обслуживание, приводит к тому, что определяющей характеристикой полезности таких систем является живучесть — способность системы сохранять работоспособность в условиях кратных отказов,

рассматриваемых на системном уровне — уровне процессорных модулей и межмодульных связей. Это делает актуальной задачу автоматизации процедур управления ресурсами ВС, в том числе процедур определения их технического состояния. Одним из перспективных направлений решения задач, связанных с автоматизацией определения состояния ВС (задач самодиагностики), является использование сопоставительного анализа исходов взаимного



тестирования ее процессорных модулей (далее просто модулей) [1].

Характерная особенность самодиагностирования в условиях кратных неисправностей, рассматриваемых на системном уровне, состоит в использовании полных, но ненадежных, тестов. Последнее означает, что оценка состояния тестируемого модуля, даваемая исправным тестирующим модулем, достоверна, а оценка, которую дает неисправный тестирующий модуль, может оказаться неверной. Исчерпывающая группа моделей полных, но ненадежных, тестов, применяемых для обнаружения устойчивых отказов модулей ВС описана в [2].

В [3] предложен подход, при котором самодиагностирование живучих ВС осуществляется с помощью адаптивных децентрализованных алгоритмов. Отличительной

СД-1131 - краткое описание инвалидизации теста. Инвалидизация рассматривается как искажение рез-та теста в тестируемом или при передаче! Здесь модель характеризуется только двумя последними знаками

чертой этого подхода является то, что состояние каждого модуля ВС определяется в результате анализа некоторого подмножества исходов тестирования

(фрагмента синдрома состояния системы), получаемого в реальном времени, и относящегося к ограниченной окрестности анализируемого модуля (локальное самодиагностирование).

Для изучения проблем локальной самодиагностики используется теоретико-графовая модель [4], представляющая собой обобщение ПМЧ-модели [1]. Модель [4] позволяет вычлениить и с общих позиций изучать зависимость диагностических атрибутов системы от свойств используемой модели ненадежных тестов. Обобщенная модель представляет собой двойку  $\langle D, A \rangle$ , где диагностический граф  $D$  — модель структуры (тестовых) связей между модулями системы, по которым одни модули проверяют состояние других модулей, и  $\langle A \rangle$  — модель теста, используемого для самодиагностирования.

$\langle A \rangle = \langle a(g, g) a(g, b) a(b, g) a(b, b) \rangle$  — четверка булевых переменных, указывающая значения исхода тестирования при всех возможных состояниях, тестирующего и тестируемого модулей (соответственно первый и второй символы в круглой скобке);  $g$  — исправный модуль,  $b$  — неисправный модуль. Каждая переменная принимает одно из трех значений:  $z \in \{0, 1, x\}$ . Значения 0 или 1 означают, что тестирующий модуль оценивает состояние тестируемого как исправное или неисправное соответственно, а символ “ $x$ ” соответствует непредсказуемому (0 или 1) результату оценки.

Учитывая, что исход теста из исправного модуля достоверен при всех моделях тестирования, т.е.  $a(g, g) = 0$  и  $a(g, b) = 1$ , ниже используем сокращенное обозначение

$\langle A \rangle = \langle a(b, g) a(b, b) \rangle$ , или  $\langle A \rangle = \langle zz \rangle$ .

В [4] установлена взаимосвязь между моделями [2] ненадежных тестов и показан концептуальный характер использования булевых функций (функций совместности, ФС) для решения основных задач самодиагностики; изучены свойства элементарных ФС, которые описывают связь состояния модулей, участвующих в выполнении теста, с исходом этого теста для разных моделей тестов из [2]. Введены показатели значимости элементарных ФС и их композиций для определения фактического состояния модулей, участвующих в тестировании.

В [3] для некоторых моделей ненадежных тестов обнаружена зависимость значимости функций совместности от структуры подграфа, индуцируемого фрагментом синдрома состояния системы. Содержание статьи составляет решение новой задачи — систематического исследования значимости ФС от структуры подграфа, индуцированного множеством тестов, выполняемых в процессе самодиагностирования.

Статья состоит из введения и пяти разделов. В разделе 2, имеющем подготовительный характер, дано общее представление о процессе децентрализованного адаптивного самодиагностирования и приведены основные определения, касающиеся применения ФС. В разделе 3 содержится постановка задачи. В разделах 4 и 5 изучены диагностические свойства “типовых” подграфов, образуемых в процессе самодиагностирования. В разделе 6 подведены итоги исследования.

В связи с широкой распространенностью ПМЧ-модели и с целью сокращения объема работы описание основных понятий самодиагностики при кратных неисправностях и ненадежных тестах опущено. В данной работе использованы терминология и нотация, введенные в работах [2, 3, 5–7]; краткий список используемых обозначений приведен в Приложении. Для упрощения изложения терминология системы распространена на представляющий ее диагностический граф.

## 2. Preliminary observations

### 2.1. Model of local self-diagnosis algorithm.

Для самодиагностирования используются децентрализованные алгоритмы, примеры реализации которых описаны в [5 гл. 3]. В [3, 4, 6, 7] описан подход к самодиагностированию, основанный на том, что определение фактического состояния каждой вершины  $v, v \in$

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

$V$ , диагностического графа  $D = (V, E)$  осуществляется с помощью правил сопоставительного анализа исходов тестирования, которые относятся только к вершинам из ее ограниченной (и способной к изменению в ходе диагностирования) окрестности и называются *правилами* (локального) *самоопределения*. Данный подход оправдан для живучих большемасштабных многопроцессорных ВС, в которых определение технического состояния совмещено с использованием системы по назначению.

Опишем вкратце модель алгоритма самодиагностирования, используя графовую модель системы. Алгоритм локального самодиагностирования представляет собой итеративный процесс, на каждом шаге которого последовательно выполняются следующие действия: 1) тестирование, завершающееся определением элементов синдрома состояния диагностического графа, которые относятся к участвующим в тестировании вершинам, 2) сопоставительный анализ фрагмента синдрома, полученного к текущему моменту времени, 3) передача результатов анализа другим вершинам диагностического графа. Результатом этих операций является изменение состояния вершин диагностического графа (или просто "состояния графа"). Состояние графа описывается с помощью меток, сопоставленных его вершинам. Каждой вершине  $v$  сопоставлена метка  $m(v) \in M$ ,  $M = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ <sup>1</sup>. Значение  $m(v) = 2$ , если фактическое состояние вершины  $v$  не идентифицировано (в частности, перед началом диагностирования); значение  $m(v) = 0$  или  $m(v) = 1$ , если по результатам анализа синдрома  $\sigma(F_k)$  вершина  $v$  признана соответственно исправной или неисправной (эти состояния называем *финальными*). Совокупность найденных финальных меток вершин, так же, как сам процесс их определения, называем *разметкой графа*. Разметка графа завершается, когда установлено финальное состояние для всех его вершин, что соответствует самодиагностированию без ремонта [1]. При выполнении разметки поведение каждой вершины  $v$  графа зависит от состояния смежных с нею вершин с учетом значения меток из множества  $M$ , присвоенных вершинам из некоторой её ограниченной окрестности, называемой *подграфом тестирования*. Вершины подграфа тестирования связаны транзитивным отношением тестирования.

На макроуровне самодиагностирование может рассматриваться как процесс порождения, слияния и разделения независимо образуемых подграфов тестирования. Инициатором образования подграфа тестирования может быть любая вершина по некоторым внешним условиям (например, команда операционной системы, команда от тестирующего модуля или от модуля смежного подграфа тестирования).

Каждой вершине  $v$  графа присваиваются метки-списки, сопоставленные некоторым выделенным элементам из множества  $M$ . В процессе разметки вершины обмениваются метками-списками, так что каждая из них знает состояние вершин из некоторой ее окрестности. Величина и состав окрестности для каждой вершины индивидуальны и зависят от порядка тестирования, исходов выполненных тестов, от задержек в пересылке индивидуальных меток-списков и др. Важно, что каждая вершина "вычисляет" свое состояние, исходя из текущего значения ее меток-списков. Детали, касающиеся управления подграфами тестирования и передачи меток-списков читатель может найти в [3]; в данной статье изучаются диагностические свойства различных структур подграфов тестирования.

Существенной новой особенностью развиваемого подхода к локальному самодиагностированию является возможность оперативной корректировки значения проектной характеристики системы — кратности допустимых неисправностей  $t$ ,  $t \leq N - 1$ , в случае, когда для некоторых вершин определены метки финального состояния<sup>2</sup>. Установка на  $r$ -м шаге разметки финального состояния неисправности для  $n$  вершин окрестности, учитываемой в вершине  $v$ , приводит к корректировке индивидуального *порога самоопределения*  $Q^{(r)}(v)$  вершины  $v$ :  $Q^{(r)}(v) := Q^{(r-1)}(v) - n$ . Установка финального состояния исправности для вершины  $v$  приводит к установке  $Q^{(r)}(v) := 0$ , поскольку исходы тестов, выполняемых исправной вершиной достоверны для любой модели ненадежного тестирования, а также к установке финального состояния для смежных вершин  $w \in \Gamma(v)$ , тестируемых из  $v$ , соответственно исходу  $a(v, w)$  теста.

Идентифицированные неисправные вершины с инцидентными им дугами исключаются из диагностического графа. Идентифицированные исправные вершины образуют диагностическое ядро, использование

<sup>1</sup> Мощность множества  $M$  зависит от выбора стратегии самодиагностирования, решающих правил идентификации состояния вершин и обеспечения обмена диагностической информацией между вершинами графа.

<sup>2</sup> Чтобы подчеркнуть первичность влияния соглашения о кратности допустимых неисправностей на диагностические свойства системы, его называют *аксиомой кратности*.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

которого уменьшает число тестов и/или операций сопоставительного анализа, необходимых для идентификации состояния диагностического графа.

**2.2. Unreliable Test Models and Compatibility Functions.** В работе [4] показано концептуальное значение использования булевых функций, названных функциями совместности, в качестве формального аппарата для описания связи между состоянием модулей, участвующих в выполнении теста, и значением его исхода. Эта связь с разных сторон изучается при решении трех основных задач самодиагностики — анализа, синтеза и самодиагностирования.

Описание модели ненадежного теста может быть представлено в двух эквивалентных формах

— в виде описанной выше двойки  $\langle A \rangle$  и в виде пары булевых функций, названных элементарными функциями  $z$ -совместности,  $f_z(v, w)$ , которые соответствуют двум финальным состояниям вершины:  $z \in \{0, 1\}$  [4]. Последнее представление удобно для решения задачи самодиагностирования. Каждая из элементарных функций  $z$ -совместности перечисляет те состояния пары из тестирующей  $v$  и тестируемой  $w$  вершин, которые порождают исход  $z = 0$  или  $z = 1$  теста  $(v, w)$ . Элементарные функции  $z$ -совместности (ЭФС) для исчерпывающей группы моделей полных, но ненадежных, тестов приведены в таблице 1.

Таблица 1. Элементарные функции  $z$ -совместности

Вид ЭФС	Элементарная функция $z$ -совместности	Использование ЭФС в моделях тестов
1	2	3
0-I	$f_0(v, w) = \bar{v} \vee w$	$\langle xx \rangle, \langle x0 \rangle, \langle 0x \rangle, \langle 00 \rangle$
0-II	$f_0(v, w) = w$	$\langle x1 \rangle, \langle 01 \rangle$
0-III	$f_0(v, w) = vw \vee \bar{v}\bar{w}$	$\langle 1x \rangle, \langle 10 \rangle$
0-IV	$f_0(v, w) = vw$	$\langle 11 \rangle$
1-I	$f_1(v, w) = \bar{v} \vee \bar{w}$	$\langle xx \rangle, \langle x1 \rangle, \langle 1x \rangle, \langle 11 \rangle$
1-II	$f_1(v, w) = v\bar{w} \vee \bar{v}w$	$\langle x0 \rangle, \langle 10 \rangle$
1-III	$f_1(v, w) = \bar{w}$	$\langle 0x \rangle, \langle 01 \rangle$
1-IV	$f_1(v, w) = v\bar{w} = \bar{f}_0(v, w)$	$\langle 00 \rangle$

Как видно из табл. 1, исчерпывающая группа моделей ненадежных тестов описывается комбинациями из четырех видов элементарных функций 0-совместности и четырех видов элементарных функций 1-совместности.

В табл. 2 приведены свойства симметричности и транзитивности<sup>3</sup> элементарных функций совместности, полученные с помощью теоретико-множественного подхода и представляющие отношение порядка вершин  $\{v, w\}$ , участвующих в выполнении теста, по их финальному состоянию [8] (в табл.2 символ  $v'$  представляет значение, которое принимает двоичная переменная  $v$ ).

*Определение 1* [8]. Элементарная функция  $z$ -совместности называется изотропной, если она содержит конститuentы единицы, в которых переменные имеют одинаковую (инверсную или неинверсную) форму и / или пару конститuent

единицы с переменными, имеющими разные знаки инверсии. Функцию, не обладающую свойством изотропности, называем анизотропной.

Отношение изотропности / анизотропности ( $I / AnI$ ) представляет особый вид отношения симметричности, состоящий в инвариантности заданного исхода  $z$  теста от выбора тестирующей (тестируемой) вершины на паре вершин, участвующих в тесте:  $f_z(v, w) = f_z(w, v)$ . Свойство изотропности позволяет применять неориентированные диагностические графы.

Пусть  $F_k$  — образ неисправностей диагностического графа  $D$ ,  $\sigma^{(r)}(F_k)$  — фрагмент порождаемого им синдрома, который сформирован в результате  $r$  итераций процедуры разметки,  $\sigma^{(r)}(F_k) \subseteq \sigma(F_k)$ , и  $D_T$  — подграф диагностического графа  $D$ , индуцируемый элементами  $\sigma^{(r)}(F_k)$  и называемый *подграфом тестирования*. Связь между фрагментом

<sup>3</sup> Бинарное отношение на множестве  $V$  является транзитивным ( $T$ ), когда  $\forall v, w, u \in V \{ (vTw) \wedge (wTu) \rightarrow (vTu) \}$ , интранзитивным ( $InT$ ), когда  $\forall v, w, u \in V \{ (vTw \wedge wTu) \rightarrow (vTu) \}$ , нетранзитивным ( $NT$ ), когда оно не является транзитивным и не является

интранзитивным:  
 $\forall v, w, u \in V \{ (vTw) \wedge (wTu) \rightarrow (vTu) \}$ .

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 РИНЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

синдрома  $\sigma^{(r)}(F_k)$  и порождающими его образами неисправностей выражается в виде функции совместности, которая представляет собой конъюнкцию элементарных функций  $z$ -совместности, соответствующих значениям элементов из  $\sigma^{(r)}(F_k)$ , приведенную к совершенной дизъюнктивной нормальной форме

(СДНФ) и из которой исключены конститuentы единицы, содержащие более  $t$  переменных в инверсной форме, здесь  $t$  — кратность неисправностей, соответствующая рассматриваемой модели ненадежных тестов.

Образуемая в итоге формула представляет *редуцированную* функцию совместности [9].

Таблица 2. Отношения порядка для ЭФС. Значимость ЭФС

Вид ЭФС	Элементарная функция $z$ -совместности	Изотропность	Транзитивность	Характер отношения порядка
1	2	3	4	5
0-I	$f_0(v, w) = \bar{v}\bar{w} \vee \bar{v}w \vee v\bar{w}$	$AnI_0$	$T$ :	Частичный порядок: $v' \geq w'$
0-II	$f_0(v, w) = \bar{v}w \vee v\bar{w}$	$AnI_0$	$T$ :	Частичный порядок: $v' \geq w'$ : $w' = 0$
0-III	$f_0(v, w) = v\bar{w} \vee \bar{v}w$	$I_0$	$T$	Эквивалентность: $v' = w'$
0-IV	$f_0(v, w) = v\bar{w}$	$I_0$	$T$	Эквивалентность: $v' = w' = 0$ .
1-I	$f_1(v, w) = \bar{v}\bar{w} \vee v\bar{w} \vee \bar{v}w$	$I_1$	$NT$	Пересечение: $\forall v, w \in V \{[a(v, w) = 1] \rightarrow \{v, w\} \cap F_k \neq \emptyset\}$
1-II	$f_1(v, w) = v\bar{w} \vee \bar{v}w$	$I_1$	$InT$	Неравносильность: $\forall v, w \in V \{[a(v, w) = 1] \rightarrow \{v' \neq w'\}$ ; Пересечение: $\forall v, w \in V \{[a(v, w) = 1] \rightarrow \{v, w\} \cap F \neq \emptyset\}$
1-III	$f_1(v, w) = \bar{w} = \bar{v}\bar{w} \vee v\bar{w}$	$AnI_1$	$T$	Частичный порядок: $v' \leq w'$ : $w' = 1$
1-IV	$f_1(v, w) = v\bar{w}$	$AnI_1$	$N$	Любой 1-подграф — это тривиальный граф

Любую функцию, полученную в результате тождественных преобразований редуцированной функции совместности, также называем редуцированной. Тождественные преобразования редуцированной функции совместности позволяют получать новую информацию о состоянии вершин подграфа тестирования, образуемого в процессе разметки.

"Полезность" редуцированной функции совместности при решении задачи сопоставительного анализа исходов выполненного тестирования оценивают с помощью двух показателей *значимости* [8]:

*определимость*, когда функция имеет хотя бы одну общую переменную, и *продуктивность*, когда форма функции совместности позволяет уточнить (или ограничить) область расположения вершин, которые имеют заданное финальное состояние, в подграфе тестирования.

Наличие или отсутствие свойств значимости заданной функции совместности ассоциируем с неформальным понятием "диагностические свойства"<sup>4</sup> соответствующего подграфа тестирования. Свойства значимости элементарных функций совместности изучены в [9] и приведены в табл. 2. В данной работе

<sup>4</sup> Под диагностическими свойствами понимаем любые количественные или качественные показатели, которые позволяют оценить достижимость или эффективность самодиагностирования, а также признаки, которые позволяют идентифицировать состояние отдельных модулей системы.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

исследуются свойства значимости композиций элементарных функций 0-совместности и 1-совместности.

Исходя из того, что идентификация состояния вершин диагностического графа осуществляется в результате сопоставительного анализа исходов тестирования, каждой компоненте связности подграфа тестирования соответствует отдельная функция совместности. Поэтому, если не оговорено другое, без нарушения общности в качестве подграфа тестирования рассматриваем только связные подграфы.

Наблюдаемое в табл.1 совпадение видов элементарных функций  $z$ -совместности для разных моделей ненадежных тестов дает основание делить модели на группы. Если модели тестирования имеют одну и ту же элементарную функцию  $z$ -совместности, то для них диагностические свойства любого выделенного  $z$ -подграфа тестирования совпадают. Очевидно также выполнение обсуждаемого свойства для объединения любых  $z$ -подграфов  $D_z^{(i)}, D_z^{(j)} \in D_T$ .

### 3. Formulation of the problem

Классическая постановка задачи самодиагностирования системы имеет следующий вид. Даны: множество  $F(t)$  допустимых образов неисправностей с кратностью, которая не превышает заданного значения  $t$  (эти образы неисправностей составляют множество допустимых); граф  $D = (V, E)$   $t$ -диагностируемой системы; модель ненадежных тестов  $\langle zz \rangle$ ; спецификация условий выполнения диагностики. Спецификация указывает дополнительные условия самодиагностирования. В данной работе рассматривается локальное самодиагностирование без ремонта для устойчивых неисправностей (отказов) модулей вычислительной системы [4]. Задача самодиагностирования состоит в том, чтобы по заданному синдрому  $\sigma$  установить порождающий его образ неисправностей  $F_k \in F(t)$ .

Исследования [3, 4, 6–8], направленные на разработку методов и алгоритмов локального самодиагностирования для модели ненадежных тестов  $\langle xx \rangle$ , показали, что свойство определмости вершины  $v$  зависит не только от значений весов дуг подграфа тестирования, выделяемого на некоторой ее окрестности, но и от структуры этого подграфа. Это указывает на необходимость проведения более детального анализа свойств значимости как для отдельных элементарных функций  $z$ -совместности, так и композиций из них, соответствующих структуре подграфа тестирования. Согласно ключевой роли, которую в задаче сопоставительного анализа играет зависимость свойства определмости

вершин от структуры анализируемого подграфа тестирования, соответствующие условия значимости будем называть условиями локального структурного самоопределения.

Целью статьи является систематическое изучение условий локального структурного самоопределения для исчерпывающей группы моделей ненадежных тестов, направленное на выработку тактики самодиагностирования, оптимальной в отношении времени диагностирования вычислительной системы. Критерием качества самодиагностирования служит число тестов, необходимых для определения финального состояния всех модулей системы. Анализируются условия локального структурного самоопределения для "типовых" структур подграфов тестирования, которые являются инвариантами к структуре диагностического графа. В качестве типовых структур выделены. Подобные типовые подграфы естественным образом возникают в ходе адаптивного децентрализованного самодиагностирования, при котором каждая управляющая тестированием вершина передает свою функцию некоторому подмножеству смежных с ней вершин, выбираемому в зависимости от полученных исходов тестирования. Особое внимание уделяется типовым подграфам, индуцируемым на множестве вершин, составляющем замкнутую окрестность выбранной вершины. В ориентированном графе замкнутую окрестность вершины  $v \in V$  образует множество вершин  $\{v, \Gamma^{-1}(v), \Gamma(v)\}$ .

### 4. Structural self-diagnosis: 0-compatibility functions

Определение 3.  $N$ -арным (ориентированным / неориентированным) деревом называют (ориентированное / неориентированное) дерево, в котором (полустепень исхода / степень) вершин не превосходит  $(N / (N + 1))$ .

Вершину  $N$ -арного ориентированного дерева с нулевой полустепенью захода называют истоком, а вершину с нулевой полустепенью исхода — стоком.

Тест  $(v, w)$  диагностического графа является 1-арным ориентированным деревом из двух вершин с истоком  $v$  и стоком  $w$ . Любой подграф тестирования представляет собой объединение 1-арных ориентированных деревьев, представляющих соответствующие тесты.

#### 4.1. Elementary function of 0-compatibility of the type 0-I

1. Простой 0-путь  $P_0(v_0, v_l) := := P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_l)$  — это 1-арное дерево с числом вершин  $l \geq 1$ . Его функция совместности записывается:

$$P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-1}, v_l) = \prod_{k=0}^{l-1} (\overline{v_k} \vee v_{k+1}) = \overline{v_0} \overline{v_1} \dots \overline{v_{l-1}} \overline{v_l} \vee \overline{v_0} \overline{v_1} \dots \overline{v_{l-1}} v_l \vee \dots \vee \overline{v_0} v_1 \dots \vee v_{l-1} v_l \vee v_0 v_1 \dots \vee v_{l-1} v_l = \overline{v_l} A \vee v_l B. \quad (1.a)$$

Здесь  $A = \overline{v_0} \overline{v_1} \overline{v_2} \dots \overline{v_{l-1}}$  и  $B = \bigcap_{k=0}^{l-2} (\overline{v_k} \vee v_{k+1})$ ; функция  $B$  описывает 0-путь  $B = P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-1})$  из вершины  $v_0$  в вершину  $v_{l-1}$ .

Выражение (1.a) представляет собой разложение функции совместности простого 0-пути по переменной  $v_l$ . Эта функция может быть представлена также в виде разложения по переменной  $v_0$ :

$$P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-1}, v_l) = v_0 A' \vee \overline{v_0} B' = v_0 (v_1 \dots v_l) \vee \overline{v_0} P_0(v_1, \dots, v_l). \quad (1.б)$$

Пусть  $Q^{(r)}(D_z)$  — порог самоопределения, найденный для подграфа  $D_z$  на  $r$ -м шаге самодиагностирования. При  $l+1 \leq Q^{(r)}(P_0)$  редуцированная функция совместности имеет вид (1.a) и продуктивна. Продуктивность состоит в упорядоченности размещения исправных и неисправных вершин: в простом 0-пути неисправные вершины предшествуют исправным<sup>5</sup>. Доказательство свойства продуктивности получаем, используя для записи минтермов порядок расположения переменных от истока к стоку.

При  $l+1 > Q^{(r)}(P_0)$  и  $l+1 - Q^{(r)}(P_0) = q$  редуцированная функция совместности простого 0-пути является определяющей согласно представлению

$$P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-1}, v_l) = [P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-q-2}, v_{l-q})] \cdot (v_{l-q+1} \dots v_{l-1} v_l),$$

которое дает следующее.

**Свойство 1.** В простом 0-пути при  $l+1 - Q^{(r)}(P_0) = q$  вершины множества  $\{v_{l-q+1}, \dots, v_l\}$  исправны.

Рассматриваемые далее подграфы тестирования представляем как объединение (возможно пересекающихся) простых 0-путей.

**2. Бесконтурный 0-подграф.** Пусть  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$  слабо связанный бесконтурный 0-подграф тестирования<sup>6</sup> с произвольным числом истоков и единственным стоком  $v_L \in V_0$ , причем  $|\Gamma^{-1}(v_L)| > 1$ . Если для этого 0-подграфа известен порог самоопределения  $Q^{(r)}(D_0)$ , то имеет место следующее.

**Свойство 2.** Если для  $|V_0| > Q^{(r)}(D_0)$ , то вершина  $v_L$  исправна:  $v_L \notin F_k \rightarrow \{m(v_L) := 0\}$ .

**Доказательство.** Поскольку достигнутый порог самоопределения меньше числа вершин рассматриваемого 0-подграфа, то в нем есть, по

крайней мере, одна исправная вершина. В бесконтурном 0-графе из каждой вершины  $v_k \in V_0 - v_L$  есть простой путь  $P_0(v_k, v_L)$  к вершине  $v_L$ . Для каждого такого пути выполняется свойство предшествования неисправных вершин исправным. Поскольку вершина  $v_L$  является конечной для любого пути  $P_0(v_k, v_L)$ , то вершина  $v_L$  исправна, что и требовалось доказать.

Из свойства 2 непосредственно вытекает следующее.

**Свойство 3.** Для слабо связного бесконтурного 0-подграфа тестирования  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$  с произвольным числом истоков и единственным стоком  $v_L \in V_0$  выполняется:

$$1) \quad \{(|V_0| - 1) = Q^{(r)}(D_0)\} \rightarrow \{(V_0 - v_L) \subseteq F_k \text{ и } v_L \in (V_0 - F_k)\} \rightarrow \{m(v_L) := 0\}$$

$$\text{и } \forall v_i \in (V_0 - v_L) \{m(v_i) := 1\};$$

$$2) \quad \{(|V_0| - 2) \geq Q^{(r)}(D_0)\} \rightarrow \{\Gamma^{-1}(v_L) \cap (V_0 - F_k) \neq \emptyset\};$$

$$3) \quad \{m(v_L) := 1\} \rightarrow \{V_0 \subseteq F_k\} \rightarrow \{\forall v_i \in (V_0 - v_L) \{m(v_i) := 1\}\}.$$

Доказательство свойства 3 оставляем читателю. Из свойств 1 и 2 также вытекает следующее.

**Свойство 4.** Пусть бесконтурный граф  $D_0^*$  представляет собой объединение бесконтурного графа  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$  с единственным стоком  $v_L$  и простого пути  $P_0(v_L, v_{L+1}, \dots, v_{L+n})$  длиной  $n \geq 1$ . Если для орграфа  $D_0^*$  выполняется  $(|V_0| + n) - Q^{(r)}(D_0^*) = q$ ,  $q > 0$ , то  $\{v_{L+n}, v_{L+n-1}, \dots, v_{L+n-p+1}\} \subset (V_0 - F_k)$  для  $p = \min\{q, n+1\}$ , так что

$$m(v_{L+n}) := m(v_{L+n-1}) := \dots := m(v_{L+n-p+1}) := 0.$$

**3. Исходящая звезда<sup>7</sup>.** Для исходящей звезды  $S_{out,p}(v_0)$ , представляющей собой частный вид дерева, с истоком  $v_0$  и множеством  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_p\}$  из  $p \geq 1$  стоков, функция 0-совместности имеет вид:

$$S_{out,p}(v_0) = (\overline{v_0} \vee v_1)(\overline{v_0} \vee v_2) \dots (\overline{v_0} \vee v_p) = A \overline{v_0} \vee v_1 v_2 \dots v_p v_0.$$

Здесь  $A$  — булева функция от переменных  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_p\}$ , тождественно равная единице. Условия значимости для исходящей звезды имеют следующей вид.

**Свойство 5.** При  $1 < Q^{(r)}(S_{out,p}) \leq p$  исходящая звезда  $S_{out,p}(v_0)$  продуктивна: среди ее стоков есть исправные вершины:  $\{v_1, v_2,$

<sup>5</sup> Описанное свойство простого 0-пути можно также вывести из отношений частичного порядка и транзитивности элементарной функции совместности 0-1 (см. табл 2), представляющей 0-путь единичной длины.

<sup>6</sup> Заметим, что слабо связанный бесконтурный граф  $D_0$  может содержать полуконтур.

<sup>7</sup> Граф-звезда — полный двудольный граф  $K_{1,n}$ .

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

$\dots, v_p\} \cap (V - F_k) \neq \emptyset$ . При  $Q^{(r)}(S_{out, p}) = 1$  исходящая звезда является определяющей:

$$[\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_p\} \subseteq (V - F)] \rightarrow$$

$$\rightarrow m(v_1) := m(v_2) := \dots := m(v_p) := 0.$$

4. Заходящая звезда. Для заходящей звезды  $S_{in, p}(v_0)$  со стоком  $v_0$  и множеством  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_p\}$  из  $p$  истоков функция 0-совместности имеет вид:

$$S_{in, p}(v_0) = (\overline{v_1} \vee v_0)(\overline{v_2} \vee v_0) \dots (\overline{v_p} \vee v_0) = \\ = \overline{v_1 v_2 \dots v_p} \vee B v_0,$$

где  $B$  — булева функция от переменных  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_p\}$ , тождественно равная единице. Значимость функции совместности для заходящей звезды определяется следующим.

*Свойство 6.* При  $p \geq Q^{(r)}(S_{in, p})$  функция совместности для заходящей звезды  $S_{in, p}(v_0)$  является определяющей: вершина  $v_0$  исправна, т.е.  $(v_0 \notin F_k) \rightarrow m(v_0) := 0$ .

5. Простой 0-контур  $C_0(l)$  длиной  $l \geq 2$  рассматриваем как объединение простого 0-пути длины  $l - 1$  из вершины  $v_0$  в вершину  $v_{l-1}$  и простого 0-пути длиной 1 из вершины  $v_{l-1}$  в вершину  $v_0$ . Используя представление функции совместности простого 0-пути в виде (1.6), получаем следующее.

*Свойство 7.* В простом 0-контуре финальные состояния вершин эквивалентны:

$$C_0(l) = [P_0(v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{l-1})] \cdot (\overline{v_{l-1}} \vee v_0) = \\ = v_0 v_1 \dots v_{l-1} \vee \overline{v_0} \overline{v_1} \dots \overline{v_{l-1}}.$$

Пусть в некотором 0-подграфе тестирования имеются простые 0-контур  $C_0^{(1)}(l_1)$  и  $C_0^{(2)}(l_2)$  с множествами вершин  $V_0^{(1)}$  и  $V_0^{(2)}$  соответственно и с единственной общей вершиной  $v$ . Анализ функции совместности для объединения этих 0-контуров показывает, что все вершины объединения имеют одинаковое состояние. Это позволяет обобщить свойство предшествования неисправных вершин исправным в простом 0-пути (см. выражение (1.a)) на произвольный ориентированный открытый 0-маршрут, а свойство эквивалентности финального состояния вершин в простом 0-контуре — на произвольный ориентированный замкнутый 0-маршрут.

Рассмотрим  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$  — произвольный 0-подграф тестирования, содержащий контуры. Применяя (с учетом отмеченного выше свойства объединения простых 0-контуров) к некоторому контуру  $C_0^{(i)}(l_i)$  операцию стягивания дуг, сведем  $D_0$  к графу  $D_0^{(i)} = (V_0^{(i)}, E_0^{(i)})$ , в котором рассматриваемый контур представлен одной вершиной с весом, равным числу вершин в нем. Повторяя рекурсивно операцию стягивания для каждого контура в подграфе  $D_0^{(i)} = (V_0^{(i)}, E_0^{(i)})$ , получим бесконтурный взвешенный 0-подграф  $D_0^{(fin)} = (V_0^{(fin)}, E_0^{(fin)})$ , к каждому простому пути которого применимо отношение предшествования

неисправных вершин исправным. Анализ взвешенного 0-подграфа  $D_0^{(fin)}$  общего вида дает возможность получать новые условия продуктивности, на базе которых можно разрабатывать эффективные алгоритмы самодиагностирования.

### 4.2. Elementary function of 0-compatibility of types 0-II, 0-III and 0-IV

Функции вида 0-II и 0-IV являются локально определяющими исправную вершину по нулевому исходу единственного теста над ней. Поэтому для них образование 0-подграфов смысла не имеет.

Функция 0-совместности типа 0-III — продуктивна: она устанавливает эквивалентность финального состояния смежных вершин  $\{v, w\}$  при  $a(v, w) = 0$ . Эта функция инвариантна к ориентации дуги  $(v, w)$ . При использовании элементарной функции совместности вида 0-III для связного 0-подграфа тестирования  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$ ,  $V_0 = \{v_0, v_1, \dots, v_n\}$ , функция совместности имеет вид:

$$f_0(D_0) = v_1 v_2 \dots v_n \vee \overline{v_1} \overline{v_2} \dots \overline{v_n}. \quad (2)$$

Вследствие инвариантности функции совместности вида 0-III к ориентации теста функция (2) применима к слабо связным ориентированным и к связным неориентированным подграфам тестирования.

**4.3. Group self-determination.** Согласно свойству (7), при использовании функции 0-I функция совместности для простого 0-контура имеет вид (2). Следовательно, диагностические свойства 0-контура в случае использования функции вида 0-I и слабо связного графа произвольной структуры в случае использования функции вида 0-III совпадают. Это дает возможность обобщить на случай функции вида 0-III отношение группового самоопределения, полученное в [10] для модели  $\langle xx \rangle$ , использующей элементарную функцию совместности вида 0-I.

*Свойство 8 (группового самоопределения).* Если для связного 0-подграфа  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$ , описываемого функцией (2), в подграфе тестирования  $D_T = (V_T, E_T)$  найдется вершина  $v_0, v_0 \notin V_0$ , смежная хотя бы с одной вершиной  $v_k \in V_0$ , и такая, что  $m(v_0) = 0$ , то финальное состояние всех вершин подграфа  $D_0$  устанавливается по исходу единственного теста  $(v_0, v_k)$ .

Из свойства (8) вытекает следующее.

*Свойство 9.* Если для связного подграфа  $D_0 = (V_0, E_0)$  функция совместности имеет вид (2), то

1. Когда  $|V_0| \geq Q^{(r)}(D_0)$ , то все вершины из  $V_0$  исправны:  $V_0 \notin F \rightarrow \forall v \in V_0 \{m(v) := 0\}$ ;

2. Когда для некоторой вершины  $w \in V_0$  устанавливается финальное состояние  $m(w) \in$

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

$\{0, 1\}$ , то для каждой вершины  $v \in \{V_0 - w\}$  выполняется  $m(v) = m(w)$ .

Нетрудно получить условия объединения компонент 0-связности, описываемых функцией (2), на основании сравнения оценок тестирования между вершинами  $v$  и  $w$ , которые принадлежат разным компонентам 0-связности  $D'_0 = (V'_0, E'_0)$  и  $D''_0 = (V''_0, E''_0)$  и смежны в диагностическом графе  $D$ . Если  $v \in V'_0$ ,  $w \in V''_0$ , то для объединения необходимо а) получить  $a(v, w) = 0$  или  $a(w, v) = 0$ , когда используется функция совместности вида 0-III, и б) получить  $a(v, w) = a(w, v) = 0$ , когда используется функция совместности вида 0-I.

### 5. Structural self-diagnosis: 1-compatibility functions

**5.1. Elementary function of 1-compatibility of the type 1-I.** Симметрический характер функции 1-совместности вида 1-I позволяет рассматривать неориентированные 1-подграфы.

В [10] показано, что для произвольного связанного неориентированного 1-подграфа  $D_1(V_1, E_1)$  функция 1-совместности  $\Phi(D_1) = \bigcap_{(v_i, v_j) \in E} (\bar{v}_i \vee \bar{v}_j)$ , приведенная к СДНФ, перечисляет все его вершинные покрытия, а полученная из нее сокращенная дизъюнктивная форма указывает все его минимальные вершинные покрытия:

$$\Phi(D_1) = \bigcap_{(v_i, v_j) \in E_1} (\bar{v}_i \vee \bar{v}_j) = \bigcup_{k=1}^p \mu_k. \quad (3)$$

Здесь  $\mu_k$  — терм,  $\mu_k \subseteq V_1$ , указывающий состав  $k$ -го по счету вершинного покрытия графа  $D_1$ , а  $p$  — число минимальных покрытий. Терм минимального ранга соответствует наименьшему покрытию, а ранг этого термина есть число вершинного покрытия. Формула (3) открывает возможность получения *точного* решения задачи идентификации вершин 1-подграфа. В [10] найдены условия точного самоопределения вершин для 1-подграфа общего вида на основе выявления общих переменных в редуцированной функции совместности.

**5.1.1. Vertex covering as a condition for self-determination.** При использовании теоретико-графового подхода задача точной идентификации финального состояния вершин сводится к задаче о перечислении минимальных вершинных покрытий заданного подграфа тестирования. Известно, что эта задача в общем случае является NP-полной. Это ставит границы применимости анализируемой постановки задачи (равно как и

использованию для ее решения функций совместности) по числу вершин и по структуре 1-подграфа. Поэтому анализируемый подход целесообразно использовать лишь для небольших 1-подграфов, т.е. на поздних стадиях самодиагностирования, когда порог определенности снижается до небольших значений.

Известен подход к *приближенному* решению задачи о вершинном покрытии, суть которого состоит в *построении* некоторого минимального вершинного покрытия заданного графа. Подход применим для графов с большим числом вершин. Для реализации этого подхода разработаны разнообразные эвристики. Однако для самодиагностирования этот подход неприемлем. При использовании этого подхода из диагностического графа исключаются не только вершины построенного минимального покрытия, но весь анализируемый 1-подграф, который может содержать как неисправные, так и исправные вершины (см. элементарную функцию совместности вида 1-I). Если найденное минимальное вершинное покрытие не является наименьшим, то это может вести к нарушению аксиомы кратности и, как следствие, к неверной диагностике<sup>8</sup>. Поэтому поиск приближенного решения задачи о вершинном покрытии не исключает перебора минимальных покрытий.

Для проверки соблюдения аксиомы кратности нет необходимости находить ни полное перечисление вершинных покрытий, ни состав какого-либо (даже наименьшего) вершинного покрытия. Для этого достаточно было бы иметь лишь *оценку снизу* для числа вершин в наименьшем вершинном покрытии или для числа вершинного покрытия. Однако оценки, известные из литературы, являются оценками сверху и не пригодны для корректировки порога самоопределения.

#### 5.1.2. Conditional self-determination.

Отмеченное в табл. 2 свойство продуктивности элементарной функции 1-совместности вида 1-I состоит в том, что единичный исход теста не идентифицирует неисправные вершины точно, а указывает на пересечение множества вершин, участвующих в тестировании, с заданным образом неисправностей, выделяя подмножество вершин, к которому они принадлежат, так что

$$\forall a(v, w) = 1 \in \sigma(F_k) \{1 \leq |v, w \cap F_k| \leq 2\}. \quad (4)$$

Выполнение (4) означает, что вершины  $\{v, w\}$  могут быть исключены из диагностического графа вместе с инцидентными им дугами, а текущее значение порога

вершин подчиняется отношению  $t/N$ , принятому для рассматриваемой модели ненадежного тестирования.

<sup>8</sup> Выполнение аксиомы кратности означает, что на каждом шаге самодиагностирования в остаточном диагностическом графе отношение между числом неисправных и исправных



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

самоопределения уменьшено на единицу. Поэтому достигаемая определимость и соответствующая корректировка порога самоопределения названы *условными* [9].

Условное самоопределение позволяет получать приближенное решение задачи о вершинном покрытии графа в виде решения задачи о его реберном покрытии. Кардинальное различие в сложности "вершинных" и "реберных" задач состоит в том, что первые относятся к разряду экспоненциально сложных, в то время как для вторых известны полиномиальные алгоритмы.

Известно использование паросочетаний в качестве приближенного решения задачи о вершинном покрытии графа. Для построения наибольших паросочетаний разработаны многочисленные детерминированные и рандомизированные, точные и приближенные алгоритмы с полиномиальной сложностью как для отдельных классов графов, так и для графов общего вида, в том числе алгоритмы, допускающие параллельную децентрализованную реализацию. Лучший из известных алгоритмов построения наибольшего паросочетания имеет полиномиальную сложность  $O(|E_1|\sqrt{|V_1|})$ .

Возможность использовать паросочетания для условного самоопределения вершин в произвольном 1-подграфе тестирования рассмотрена в [10]. Для рассмотренных в предыдущем разделе типовых подграфов тестирования значения условной корректировки порога самоопределения соответствуют следующим известным из литературы оценкам мощности наибольшего паросочетания.

*Свойство 10.* Размер наибольшего паросочетания  $M(G_1)$  для 1-подграфа со структурой  $G$  составляет:  
—  $|M(P_1)| = \lfloor l/2 \rfloor$  для простого 1-пути длины  $l$ ;  
—  $|M(C_1)| = \lfloor l/2 \rfloor$  для 1-цикла длины  $l$ ;  
—  $|M(S_{1(p)})| = 1$  для графа-звезды, причем в качестве паросочетания выбирается любая пара вершин вида  $\{v_0, v_i\}$ ,  $i = \overline{1, p}$ ;  
—  $|M(K_{1(p)})| = \lfloor p/2 \rfloor$  для полного графа с  $p$  вершинами;  
—  $|M_i(K_{1(p,n)})| = \min\{p, n\}$  для полного двудольного графа с долями размера  $p$  и  $n$ ;

Преимущества, составляемые использованием паросочетаний, состоят в следующем: 1) можно использовать построение конкретного паросочетания в качестве решения задачи о вершинном покрытии, при котором не нарушается аксиома кратности; 2) при использовании паросочетания из диагностического графа исключаются элементы паросочетания и только они, а оставшиеся элементы 1-подграфа могут участвовать в дальнейшем диагностировании.

### 5.1.3. Operative using of matchings.

Кардинальным решением задачи о покрытии вершин 1-подграфа множеством неисправных вершин, при котором также автоматически обеспечивается соблюдение аксиомы кратности, является следующее.

*Свойство 11.* Если при выполнении очередного теста  $(v, w)$  получено  $a(v, w) = 1$ , то вершины, участвовавшие в выполнении этого теста, удаляются из диагностического графа вместе с инцидентными им дугами, а порог самоопределения уменьшается на единицу.

Использование описанной оперативной условной корректировки порога самоопределения а) увеличивает вероятность продуктивности ранее образованных функций совместности и обеспечивает сопутствующее сокращение общего времени диагностирования, б) позволяет избежать образования больших 1-подграфов и применения трудоемких процедур их диагностического анализа.

### 5.2. Elementary function of compatibility of a

**type 1-II.** Как и функция вида 1-I, данная элементарная функция совместности является симметрической, что позволяет рассматривать неориентированные варианты 1-подграфов.

Как следует из табл. 2, функция вида 1-II является частным случаем функции 1-I: для функции 1-I имеет место отношение  $2 \geq |\{v, w\} \cap F| \geq 1$ , а для функции 1-II — отношение  $|\{v, w\} \cap F| = 1$ . Следовательно, к функциям совместности, являющимся конъюнкцией элементарных функций совместности вида 1-II, применимы описанные в разделе 5.1 отношения условной определмости, базирующиеся на отношении (4).

Новые свойства продуктивности функции совместности, являющихся конъюнкцией элементарных функций совместности вида 1-II получаем, учитывая свойства неравносильности состояния вершин, участвующих в тестировании. Для произвольного 1-подграфа, описываемого конъюнкцией элементарных функций совместности вида 1-II, имеет место следующее.

*Свойство 12.* При использовании ненадежных тестов с функцией совместности вида 1-II любые вершины, смежные в (связном) 1-подграфе, имеют инверсные состояния.

*Следствие 1.* При использовании ненадежных тестов с функцией совместности вида 1-II любой 1-подграф является двудольным.

Пусть  $D_1 = (V_1, E_1)$  — произвольный связный 1-подграф тестирования, образованный при использовании тестов с элементарной функцией совместности вида 1-II. Выделение множеств вершин, составляющих его доли, осуществляется с помощью следующей процедуры.

Известно, что двудольный граф 2-раскрашиваем в цвета  $\{0, 1\}$ . Выберем произвольную вершину 1-подграфа за начальную и присвоим ей цвет 0. Тогда все вершины 1-подграфа, находящиеся на четном расстоянии от начальной, также получают цвет 0, а вершины на нечетном расстоянии — цвет 1. Обозначим множества вершин цвета  $k$ ,  $k \in \{0, 1\}$ , через  $V_{10}$  и  $V_{11}$  соответственно. Полученное разбиение 1-подграфа тестирования  $D_1$  обладает следующими свойствами значимости.

*Свойство 13. При заданном пороге самоопределения  $Q^{(r)}(D_1)$ :*

13.1. Если  $\max\{|V_{10}|, |V_{11}|\} \leq Q^{(r)}(D_1)$ , то функция совместности непродуктивна.

13.2. Если  $|V_{10}| \neq |V_{11}|$  и  $\max\{|V_{10}|, |V_{11}|\} > Q^{(r)}(D_1) \geq \min\{|V_{10}|, |V_{11}|\}$ , то функция совместности самоопределима, а именно, доля минимального размера состоит из неисправных вершин, а доля максимального размера — из исправных.

13.3. При любом значении  $Q^{(r)}(D_1)$  для условного самоопределения в заданном произвольном 1-подграфе  $D_1$  может использоваться любое его паросочетание с корректировкой порога самоопределения на величину размера паросочетания.

В частности, при реализации свойства 13.3. к 1-подграфу  $D_1$  можно итеративно применять процедуру удаления последовательно выделяемых элементов паросочетания, описанную для функции вида 1-I.

Двудольность 1-подграфа тестирования означает, в частности, следующее.

1. Все простые 1-циклы четные (Кениг).

2. В простом 1- пути состояния терминальных вершин одинаковы, если путь имеет четную длину и разные — в противном случае.

3. Для простого пути или простого цикла длины  $l$  условная корректировка порога самоопределения составляет величину числа паросочетания  $\lfloor l/2 \rfloor$ .

4. Для полного двудольного графа с долями  $r$  и  $n$  условная корректировка порога самоопределения составляет величину  $\min\{r, n\}$ .

**5.3. Elementary functions of compatibility of a type 1-II, 1-III and 1-IV.** Эти функции являются определяющими. Элементарная функция совместности 1-IV является подфункцией функции вида 1-III. Значимость элементарных функций совместности вида 1-III и 1-IV, вытекающая из самоопределения неисправной тестируемой вершины, состоит в следующем.

*Свойство 14.*

14.1. При использовании элементарной функции совместности вида 1-III:

а)  $m(w) := 1 \rightarrow \forall u \in \Gamma_1(w)\{m(u) := 1\}$  и если  $m(w) = 1$ , то

$\forall u \in [\Gamma(v) - \Gamma_1(v) - \Gamma_0(v)]\{a(w, u) = 1 \rightarrow m(u) := 1\}$  Согласно этим выражениям, определяющими являются как исходы тестов, полученные (тестирующей) вершиной  $w$  до идентификации ее финального состояния, так и исходы тестов из идентифицированной неисправной вершины; б) если  $m(w) = 0$ , то  $\Gamma_1^{-1}(w) = \emptyset$ ; в) единичные исходы тестов над идентифицированной неисправной вершиной  $w$  непродуктивны.

14.2. При использовании элементарной функции совместности вида 1-IV:

а)  $m(w) := 1 \rightarrow \forall u \in \Gamma_1^{-1}(w)\{m(u) := 0\}$  и если  $m(w) = 1$ , то

$\forall u \in [\Gamma^{-1}(w) - \Gamma_0^{-1}(w) - \Gamma_1^{-1}(w)]\{a(u, w) = 1 \rightarrow m(u) := 0\}$ ;

б) если  $m(v) = 0$ , то  $\Gamma_1^{-1}(v) = \emptyset$ ; в) если  $m(w) = 1$ , то  $\Gamma_1(w) = \emptyset$ ;

г)  $m(v) := 0 \rightarrow \forall u \in \Gamma_1(v)\{m(u) := 1\} \wedge \forall u \in \Gamma_0(v)\{m(u) := 0\}$ .

14.3. Продуктивность нулевого исхода теста из или над вершинами, получившими метку финального состояния, для функций вида 1-III и 1-IV зависит от модели тестирования, в которой эти функции используются.

## 6. Conclusion

Изучается самодиагностирование многопроцессорных живучих вычислительных систем при кратных отказах, рассматриваемых на уровне процессорных модулей. Рассматривается локальное самодиагностирование, при котором состояние отдельных процессорных модулей вычислительной системы идентифицируется по результатам сопоставительного анализа исходов тестирования, относящихся к их ограниченной окрестности.

Выполнен анализ локальных условий идентификации состояния модулей системы для исчерпывающей группы моделей полных, но ненадежных, тестов. Для анализа использован формальный аппарат булевых функций (функции совместности), которые перечисляют состояния модулей, участвующих во взаимном тестировании, совместные с полученными исходами тестирования. Введены показатели значимости условий локальной самодиагностируемости в отношении а) непосредственной идентификации фактического состояния модулей, участвующих в тестировании и б) возможности выбрать последовательность дальнейшего тестирования, способствующую достижению условия (а).

Для исчерпывающей группы моделей ненадежных тестов изучены свойства значимости

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

функций совместности, описывающих " типовые " структурные единицы (подграфы тестирования), известные из теории графов и инвариантные к структуре диагностического графа системы. Подобные типовые подграфы естественным образом возникают в ходе адаптивного децентрализованного самодиагностирования. Выведены условия " точной " и " условной " идентификации состояния отдельных модулей системы по локальным признакам. Даны рекомендации по предпочтительности формирования структур подграфов тестирования (с точки зрения значимости описывающих эти структуры функций совместности) для локальной диагностики. Полученные результаты могут быть использованы как для сравнительного анализа эффективности моделей ненадежных тестов, для выбора стратегии и тактики самодиагностирования и для разработки эффективных децентрализованных адаптивных алгоритмов локального самодиагностирования.

### Attachment

Список используемых обозначений.

$|X|$  — мощность множества  $X$ .

$\lfloor x \rfloor$  — наибольшее целое такое, что  $\lfloor x \rfloor \leq x$ .

$\lceil x \rceil$  — наименьшее целое такое, что  $\lceil x \rceil \geq x$ .

$D = (V, E)$  — граф с взвешенными дугами, представляющий диагностическую структуру системы; диагностический граф.

$V = \{v: v \in V\}$  — множество вершин, представляющих модули системы;  $|V| = N$  — число модулей системы.

$E = \{(v, w): v, w \in V\}$  — множество дуг, представляющих связи от тестирующей вершины  $v$  к тестируемой вершине  $w$ .

$a(v, w) \in \{0, 1\}$  — двоичный вес дуги  $(v, w)$ ;  $a(v, w) = 0$ , если вершина  $v$  считает вершину  $w$  исправной и  $a(v, w) = 1$  в противном случае.

$t$  — кратность неисправностей;  $t \leq N$ .

$F_k \subset V$  — образ неисправностей: множество неисправных вершин графа.

$F(t) = \{F_k: |F_k| \leq t; k = \overline{1, |F(t)|}\}$  — множество допустимых образов неисправностей.

$\sigma(F_k) = \{a(v, w)\}$  — упорядоченное множество — синдром состояния графа, совместный с заданным образом неисправностей  $F_k$  (порождаемый  $F_k$ ).

$\Gamma^{-1}(v) = \{w: (w, v) \in E\}$  — множество вершин, тестирующих вершину  $v$ .

$\Gamma(v) = \{w: (v, w) \in E\}$  — множество вершин, тестируемых из вершины  $v$ .

$H(v) = \Gamma^{-1}(v) \cup \Gamma(v)$  — множество вершин, смежных с вершиной  $v$  в графе  $D$ .

Для  $X \subset V: \Gamma^{-1}(X) = \{\cup_{v \in X} \Gamma^{-1}(v) - X\}$ ;  $\Gamma(X) = \{\cup_{v \in X} \Gamma(v) - X\}$ .

### References:

1. Preparata, F. P., Metze, G., & Chien, R. J. (1967). On connection assignment problem of diagnosable systems. *IEEE Trans Electron Comput*, EC-16: 12, 848–854.
2. Kavianpour, A., & Friedman, A. (1980). A different diagnostic models for multiprocessor systems. In *Proc Inf Processing 80, IFIP Congress 80, Tokyo-Melburn*, 157–162.
3. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2007). Lokal'noe samodiagnostirovanie v vychislitel'nyh sistemah s cirkulyantnoj strukturoj. *Avtomatika i telemekhanika*, №3, pp.187–198.
4. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2007). Local Diagnostics in Computer Systems with the Circulant Structure. *Autom. Remote Control*, 68: 3, pp. 545–556.
5. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2015). O konceptual'noj osnove sravnitel'nogo analiza i resheniya zadach samodiagnostiki mnogoprocessornyh sistem dlya raznyh modelej nenadezhnogo testirovaniya. *Avtomatika i telemekhanika*, № 7, pp.150–164.
6. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2015). On the Conceptual Foundations of Comparative Analysis and Solution of Self-Diagnostic Problems In Multiprocessor Systems Under Different Unreliable Testing Models. *Autom. Remote Control*, 76:7, pp. 1260–1270.
7. Dimitriev, Y. K. (1993). *Samodiagnostika modul'nyh vychislitel'nyh sistem.* (p.293). Novosibirsk: VO "Nauka". Sibirskaya izdatel'skaya firma.
8. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2008). Chastichnoe i polnoe lokal'noe diagnostirovanie v vychislitel'nyh sistemah s cirkulyantnoj strukturoj. *Avtomatika i telemekhanika*, №7, pp. 136–145.
9. Dimitriev, Y. K. (2008). Partial and Complete Local Diagnosis in Computer Systems with

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI</b> (Russia) = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

- Circulant Structure. *Autom. Remote Control*, **69**:7, pp. 1223–1230.
- Dimitriev, Y. K. (2010). Analiz vozmozhnosti lokal'nogo diagnostirovaniya v vychislitel'nyh sistemah s cirkulyantnoj strukturoj na osnove ispol'zovaniya izbytochnosti v chisle analiziruemyh iskhodov testirovaniya. *Avtomatika i telemekhanika*, № 4, pp. 169–180.
  - Dimitriev, Y. K. (2010). Analysis of the Possibility of Local Diagnosis in Computer Systems with Circulant Structure Based on Redundancy in the Number of Analyzed Testing Results. *Autom. Remote Control*, **71**:4, pp. 697–707.
  - Dimitriev, Y. K. (2012). Pravila uslovnogo lokal'nogo samoopredeleniya i algoritm diagnostirovaniya mnogoprocessornoj sistemy s cirkulyantnoj diagnosticheskoj strukturoj na ih osnove. *Avtomatika i telemekhanika*, № 5, pp.125–140.
  - Dimitriev, Y. K. (2012). Conditional Local Self-regulation Rules and a Diagnostic Algorithm for a Multiprocessor System with Circulant Diagnostic Structure Based on these Rules. *Autom. Remote Control*, **73**:5, pp. 862–872.
  - Dimitriev, Y. K. (2017). On the use of boolean functions for comparative analysis of models of unreliable tests, and the development of algorithms for self-diagnosis of multiprocessor computing systems. *International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science, Issue: 09, Volume: 53*, pp. 101–112. SoI: <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-09-53-16>  
<https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS>
  - Dimitriev, Y. K., & Zadorozhny, A. F. (2016). On conditions of local self-diagnosis of multiprocessor computing systems under multiple faults. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, **41**:09, pp.52-61. <http://t-science.org/axivDOI/2016/09-41/PDF/09-41-8.pdf> <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-09-41-8>  
<http://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2016.09.41.8> )

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



### SECTION 4. Computer science, computer engineering and automation

**Marina Vladimirovna Shkurina**  
Peter the Great St. Petersburg Polytechnic University  
Master's Student  
Institute of Computer Science and Technology

**Oleg Yurievich Sabinin**  
Peter the Great St. Petersburg Polytechnic University  
Candidate of Engineering Sciences, Docent  
Institute of Computer Science and Technology

## COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS OF EXTRACTIVE TEXT SUMMARIZATION METHODS FOR TEXTS IN RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

**Abstract:** Each day the amount of data online grows, which leads to needing to present information in a more condensed form, and automatic text summarization can help with that. In this article the applicability of some of the most popular methods for extractive summarization to texts in Russian language is explored.

**Key words:** Automatic text summarization, extractive text summarization, natural language processing, text analysis, data mining.

**Language:** Russian

**Citation:** Shkurina, M. V., & Sabinin, O. Y. (2019). Comparative analysis of extractive text summarization methods for texts in Russian language. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 164-169.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-17> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.17>

### СРАВНИТЕЛЬНЫЙ АНАЛИЗ ИЗВЛЕКАЮЩИХ МЕТОДОВ АВТОМАТИЧЕСКОГО АННОТИРОВАНИЯ ДЛЯ ТЕКСТОВ НА РУССКОМ ЯЗЫКЕ

**Аннотация:** Каждый день объем данных в сети Интернет и в хранилищах данных растет, из-за чего возникает необходимость представлять информацию в более сжатом формате, и автоматическое аннотирование текста может помочь решить эту задачу. В этой статье исследована применимость наиболее популярных методов извлекающего аннотирования для текстов на русском языке.

**Ключевые слова:** Автоматическое аннотирование текста, извлекающее аннотирование текста, обработка естественного языка, анализ текста, анализ данных.

#### Введение

Сегодня человеку доступны огромные объемы информации, находящиеся в сети Интернет или в различных хранилищах данных, и объем этих данных увеличивается с невероятной скоростью. Согласно отчету аналитической фирмы IDC, проспонируемому Seagate, объем данных в 2025 году достигнет отметки в 175 зеттабайт (для сравнения, в 2018 году объем данных составил 33 зеттабайта). [1] При таких условиях появляется острая необходимость сокращения объемов этой информации до коротких, ёмких аннотаций. Составление аннотаций вручную – это очень трудоемкая задача, к тому же составление таких аннотаций для всех существующих текстов просто

невозможно. В связи с этим все больший интерес вызывает задача автоматического аннотирования текста.

Исследования в этой области начались еще в 1950-ые годы [2], но все еще нельзя сказать, что задача полностью решена, в силу сложности и неоднозначности естественного языка. Несмотря на это существуют популярные методы автоматического аннотирования, которые позволяют в большинстве случаев получить довольно хорошие аннотации, содержащие выдержки из исходного текста.

Большая часть исследований в данной области проводится для наборов данных, где тексты и аннотации представлены на английском

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

языке. При этом исследования для текстов на русском языке встречаются довольно редко.

В данной статье будут кратко рассмотрены существующие подходы к автоматическому аннотированию, более подробно будут рассмотрены методы, наиболее часто используемые для аннотирования текстов на английском языке. Для рассмотренных методов будет проведен сравнительный анализ с использованием текстов на русском языке.

### Подходы к автоматическому аннотированию

Существует несколько классификаций подходов к автоматическому аннотированию, и в каждом случае учитываются различные особенности задачи.

На основе количества входных документов выделяют аннотирование одного документа и аннотирование массива документов. [3] Во втором случае более критичной становится проблема избыточности – из исходных документов нужно выбрать предложения таким образом, чтобы информация, присутствующая в нескольких документах, не повторялась в аннотации.

Также методы автоматического аннотирования можно разделить на основе цели дальнейшего использования аннотации. Здесь выделяют общее аннотирование и аннотирование по запросу. Для второго типа результатом будет аннотация, содержащая только ту информацию, которая соответствует заранее заданному запросу.

По языку методы делятся на монолингвальные, мультилингвальные и кросслингвальные. Когда язык исходного документа и аннотации совпадает, то метод относится к монолингвальным. Если исходный документ написан на нескольких языках, так же, как и аннотация, то метод является мультилингвальным. Метод относится к кросслингвальным, когда язык исходного документа и язык аннотации различаются.

Наиболее принципиальная и важная классификация, которая является предметом большей части исследований, – это классификация на основе способа построения текста. В ней выделяются две группы методов: извлекающие и генерирующие. Извлекающие методы составляют аннотацию из предложений, присутствующих в тексте, а генерирующие методы способны создавать новый текст, которого нет в исходном документе.

### Рассматриваемые методы

Для анализа были выбраны извлекающие методы аннотирования, которые снискали наибольшую популярность для аннотирования англоязычных текстов.

### Метод с применением TF-IDF

TF-IDF (Term Frequency Inverse Document Frequency) – статистическая мера, которую можно

использовать для оценивания важности конкретного слова в контексте всего документа, входящего в общую коллекцию. [4]

Эта мера состоит из двух частей. TF или частота слова – это отношение количества вхождения конкретного термина к суммарному набору слов в исследуемом тексте. IDF или инвертированная частота документа – это инверсия частотности, с которой определенное слово фигурирует в коллекции текстов. Это на самом деле показывает, насколько важно рассматриваемое слово в рамках текста. Учёт IDF уменьшает вес часто и широко употребляемых слов, что позволяет увеличить вес более редких слов, которые с большей вероятностью будут репрезентативными для данного текста. Частота слова рассчитывается по формуле (1), инвертированная частота документа по формуле (2), а сама метрика TF-IDF по формуле (3).

$$TF = \frac{n_t}{n}, \quad (1)$$

где  $n_t$  – число вхождений слова  $t$  в документ,  
 $n$  – общее число слов в документе.

$$IDF = \log \frac{d}{d_t}, \quad (2)$$

где  $d$  – общее число документов,  
 $d_t$  – число документов, в которых встречается  $t$ .

$$TF - IDF = TF \times IDF, \quad (3)$$

Алгоритм с использованием TF-IDF выглядит следующим образом:

1. На основе некоторого массива документов для всех встречающихся в них слов рассчитывается метрика IDF.

2. В документе, для которого необходимо сгенерировать аннотацию, метрика TF-IDF рассчитывается только для существительных в предложении.

3. На основе полученных значений предложения сортируются по убыванию. В итоговую аннотацию берутся первые  $n$  предложений, где  $n$  задается пользователем.

### TextRank и LexRank

TextRank [5] и LexRank [6] – это методы на основе использования графов, которые были разработаны примерно в одно время двумя независимыми группами. В основе обоих методов лежит алгоритм PageRank [7], изначально созданный компанией Google для определения «важности» веб-страницы.

PageRank предполагает, что чем более важна веб-страница, тем больше на нее будут ссылаться другие страницы. При этом учитывается как число ссылок, так и их качество – то есть насколько важна страница, которая ссылается на рассматриваемую веб-страницу.

PageRank страницы  $i$  рассчитывается по формуле(4).

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>РИИЦ (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

$$PR(i) = \frac{1-d}{N} + d \sum_{j=1}^N \frac{PR(j)}{C(j)}, \quad (4)$$

где  $N$  – число вершин графа,

$PR(j)$  – значение PageRank страницы  $j$ , которая ссылается на  $i$ ,

$C(j)$  – общее количество страниц, на которые ссылается  $j$ ,

$d$  – коэффициент затухания, который находится в диапазоне  $[0; 1]$  (в классической формуле принимается равным 0,85).

Для методов TextRank и LexRank процесс создания аннотация можно разделить на два этапа:

1. Создание графа: предложения текста являются вершинами, а степень сходства предложений – весами ребер, соединяющих эти предложения.

2. Реализация алгоритма PageRank с учетом весов: это позволяет извлечь из текста  $n$  предложений с самым высоким рангом.

В методе TextRank оценка степени сходства двух предложений  $S_i$  и  $S_j$ , которые представляют собой набор слов, которые в нем появляются ( $S_i = w_1^i, w_2^i, \dots, w_{N_i}^i$ ), осуществляется по формуле (5).

$$sim(S_i, S_j) = \frac{|\{w_k | w_k \in S_i \& w_k \in S_j\}|}{\log(|S_i|) + \log(|S_j|)} \quad (5)$$

Метод LexRank для оценки степени сходства использует модифицированную косинусную меру, которая рассчитывается по формуле (6).

Здесь для оценки сходства используются метрики TF и IDF, которые были описаны ранее.

**Метод с применением латентно-семантического анализа**

$$sim(S_i, S_j) = \frac{\sum_{w \in S_i, S_j} tf_{w, S_i} tf_{w, S_j} (idf_w)^2}{\sqrt{\sum_{x_i \in S_i} (tf_{x_i, S_i} idf_{x_i})^2} \times \sqrt{\sum_{y_i \in S_j} (tf_{y_i, S_j} idf_{y_i})^2}} \quad (6)$$

Латентно-семантический анализ (ЛСА) – это вычислительная модель, которая позволяет представить семантику на основе следующих идей: два слова близки семантически, если появляются в схожем контексте, и два контекста схожи, если содержат семантически близкие слова. [8] Первый шаг латентно-семантического анализа – это создание матрицы слово-на-предложение  $S_{[P \times N]}$ . Строки матрицы соответствуют словам, а колонки – предложениям. В ячейки записывается, сколько раз данное слово встретилось в данном предложении.

После создания матрицы применяется инструмент сингулярного разложения (Singular Value Decomposition, SVD). Согласно теореме о сингулярном разложении, любая вещественная прямоугольная матрица может быть разложена на произведение трех матриц:

$$S = U \Sigma W^T, \quad (7)$$

где  $U_{[P \times P]}$  – унитарная матрица,

$\Sigma_{[P \times N]}$  – матрица, у которой все элементы, не лежащие на диагонали равны нулю,

$W^T$  – это матрица, которая является результатом транспонирования унитарной матрицы  $W_{[N \times N]}$ .

Диагональные элементы  $\Sigma$  являются отсортированными сингулярными значениями:  $\Sigma_{[i, i]} > \Sigma_{[i+1, i+1]}$ . Можно получить приближение матрицы  $S$  другой матрицей меньшего ранга  $k$ :

$$S \approx U \Sigma_k W^T = U_k \Sigma_k W_k^T, \quad (8)$$

где  $U_k$  и  $W_k$  соответствуют первым  $k$  столбцам  $U$  и  $W$ .

Такое разложение позволяет уменьшить размерность исходной матрицы, подчеркнуть наиболее сильные связи и при этом избавиться от шума.

Обычно в качестве  $k$  выбирают число от 100 до 500, но в целом выбор зависит от размера документа.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

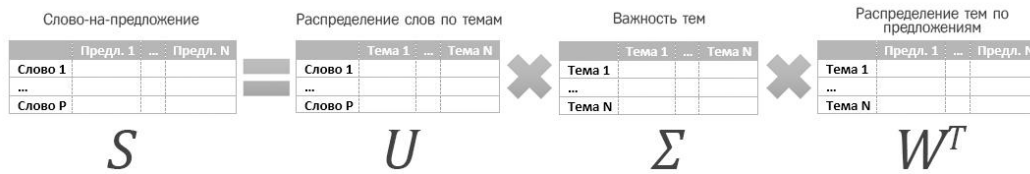


Рисунок 1 - Сингулярное разложение матрицы слово-на-предложение и его интерпретация

Последний шаг в методах ЛСА – это собственно выбор предложений для аннотации. Есть несколько вариаций методов ЛСА, которые отличаются способом отбора, но одни из лучших результатов показывает метод Cross [9].

Здесь также выполняется сингулярное разложение матрицы  $S$ , но после этого шага и перед выбором предложений проводится дополнительная обработка – для каждой темы, которая представлена строкой в векторе  $W^T$ , рассчитывается среднее значение. В ячейки этой строки, в которых значение меньше или равно среднему, записывается ноль. Этот шаг нужен, чтобы для каждой темы исключить предложения, которые не являются ключевыми.

Затем для каждого предложения рассчитывается так называемая длина: сначала каждая колонка, соответствующая предложению, умножается на сингулярные значения матрицы  $\Sigma$ . Это делается с целью придать больший вес более важным темам. После этого для каждой колонки суммируются все ее значения – эта сумма и называется длиной предложения. В аннотацию выбираются предложения с самым большим значением длины.

### Оценка полученных результатов

Оценка аннотации – непростая задача, так как для конкретного документа или набора документов не существует идеальной аннотации.

На сегодняшний день для оценки систем автоматического аннотирования наиболее популярной и широко используемой является набор метрик ROUGE [10], предложенный в 2004 году и ставший стандартом автоматической оценки аннотаций. В этот набор входят метрики ROUGE-N, ROUGE-L, ROUGE-W и ROUGE-S.

Метрика ROUGE-N, которая чаще всего используется для оценки результатов, основывается на сравнении n-грамм (в качестве  $n$  чаще всего берется 1 или 2), полученных из набора эталонных аннотаций и n-грамм оцениваемой аннотации, и вычисляется по формуле (9):

$$ROUGE - N = \frac{\sum_{S \in R} \sum_{g_n \in S} C_m(g_n)}{\sum_{S \in E} \sum_{g_n \in S} C_m(g_n)} \quad (9)$$

где  $R$  – множество эталонных аннотаций;

$g_n$  – n-грамм длины  $n$ ;

$C_m(g_n)$  – количество n-грамм  $g_n$ , совпавших для эталонной и оцениваемой аннотации;

$C(g_n)$  – количество n-грамм  $g_n$  в эталонной аннотации.

По сути, ROUGE-N является метрикой, оценивающей полноту. То есть ее значение будет тем выше, чем больше информации, присутствующей в эталонной аннотации, вошло в оцениваемую аннотацию, при этом наличие в оцениваемой аннотации лишней информации не учитывается.

Таблица 1. Результаты оценки сравниваемых методов

Метод	ROUGE-1 Степень сжатия					ROUGE-2 Степень сжатия				
	0.9	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.9	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5
Baseline	0.34	0.43	0.48	0.54	0.57	0.03	0.05	0.06	0.08	0.09
TF-IDF	0.44	0.52	0.55	0.59	0.62	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.11	0.12
TextRank	0.42	0.50	0.56	0.59	0.61	0.05	0.08	0.10	0.11	0.12
LexRank	0.36	0.45	0.51	0.57	0.60	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.12
LSA	0.47	0.54	0.58	0.62	0.64	0.07	0.09	0.11	0.13	0.13

Для русского языка крупной проблемой в области автоматического аннотирования является отсутствие размеченных наборов данных, на основе которых можно было бы обучать системы автоматического аннотирования или проверять их результаты. В связи с этим в качестве наборов данных использовались главы из произведений

русской литературы, а в качестве эталонных аннотаций – краткие содержания этих глав, найденные в сети Интернет. Всего было использовано 11 текстов и аннотаций.

Для оценки результатов каждый алгоритм запускался несколько раз с разными параметрами степени сжатия (на основе степени сжатия



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	РИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

рассчитывается, сколько предложений должно быть в итоговой аннотации): от 50% сжатия до 90%. Для каждой полученной аннотации проводилось сравнение с эталонной аннотацией и вычислялись значения метрик ROUGE-1 и ROUGE-2.

Чтобы оценить, насколько хорошие результаты показывают рассматриваемые методы, был также введен baseline – простейший алгоритм, который формирует аннотацию выбором случайных предложений из текста. Введение такого baseline помогает понять, улучшаются ли генерируемые аннотации от внедрения более сложных вычислительных моделей, и если улучшаются, то насколько.

В таблице 1 приведены результаты для сравниваемых методов, полученные вычислением метрик ROUGE-1 и ROUGE-2 и усреднением результатов для разных текстов.

На основе полученных данных можно увидеть, что все сравниваемые методы показывают лучшие результаты, чем случайный выбор предложений. При этом графовые алгоритмы TextRank и LexRank показывают худшие результаты по сравнению с другими методами. Лучший результат показывает метод с использованием латентно-семантического анализа.

Для всех методов наблюдается ухудшение результата при увеличении степени сжатия, что обоснованно, так как чем больше предложений в генерируемой аннотации, тем больше возможностей у метода выбрать информативное предложение.

### Проблемы извлекающих методов аннотирования

С помощью извлекающих методов аннотирования можно добиться неплохих результатов, но такие методы сильно ограничены и не всегда сгенерированные аннотации корректны:

- Извлекающие методы могут только либо включить, либо исключить предложение из аннотации.

Если предложение очень длинное, и при этом содержит очень важную информацию, система аннотирования должна будет включить предложение целиком, даже если оно содержит много лишней информации. Это может сильно снизить эффективность автоматического аннотирования.

- Текст далеко не всегда получается связным.

Так как предложения могут быть взяты из разных частей текста, которые могут находиться далеко друг от друга, то читабельность

полученного текста не всегда оказывается на высоком уровне. Если в аннотацию выбирается предложение, которое ссылается на информацию, представленную в одном из предыдущих, и это предыдущее предложение не включается в аннотацию, то читатель может не понять, о чем речь.;

- Текст аннотации может искажать факты.

Помимо того, что в аннотацию может войти предложение, для понимания которого будет не хватать другого предложения из исходного текста, включение таких предложений может исказить исходный смысл. Так, например, если есть несколько предложений: “Иван купил себе новые тапки. Кот Ивана, Мурзик, не оценил их по достоинству. На следующий день он изжевал эти тапки в клочья.” Если в аннотацию войдут первое и третье предложение, то читатель подумает, что это Иван изжевал собственные тапки в клочья. Для того, чтобы избежать такой проблемы, в системах аннотирования могут использоваться методы разрешения анафоры и кореферентности.

### Заключение

В данной работе были рассмотрены существующие подходы к решению задачи автоматического аннотирования, были более подробно изучены наиболее популярные методы извлекающего аннотирования, а также было проведено сравнение эффективности работы этих методов для текстов на русском языке.

На основе проведенной работы можно сделать следующие выводы:

- с помощью методов извлекающего аннотирования можно получать достаточно неплохие результаты;

- среди рассматриваемых методов для имеющихся данных лучшие результаты показал метод латентно-семантического анализа;

- любая система извлекающего аннотирования имеет ограничения, и в некоторых случаях информация в аннотации может быть искажена.

Проведенное исследование показывает, что для получения более качественных аннотаций на основе методов извлекающего аннотирования необходимо избавляться от лишней информации в предложениях, сохранив при этом важную информацию (использование методов для сжатия предложений), а также снизить вероятность получения аннотации с некорректной информацией (использование методов с разрешением анафоры и кореферентности).

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

## References:

1. Reinsel, D., Gantz, J., & Rydning, J. (2018). *The Digitization of the World From Edge to Core*.
2. Luhn, H. P. (1958). The Automatic Creation of Literature Abstracts. *IBM Journal of Research and Development, Vol. 2, № 2*, pp. 159–165.
3. Gambhir, M., & Gupta, V. (2017). Recent automatic text summarization techniques: a survey *Artificial Intelligence Review. Springer Netherlands, Vol. 47, № 1*, pp. 1–66.
4. Thanaki, J. (2017). *Python Natural Language Processing: Advanced machine learning and deep learning techniques for natural language processing*. (p.486). Packt Publishing.
5. Mihalcea, R., & Tarau, P. (2004). *TextRank: Bringing Order into Texts* *Conference on Empirical Methods in Natural Language Processing, EMNLP 2004, A Meeting of Sigdat, A Special Interest Group of the Acl, Held in Conjunction with ACL 2004, 25-26 July 2004, Barcelona, Spain*.
6. Erkan, G., & Radev, D. R. (2004). LexRank: Graph-based Lexical Centrality as Saliency in Text Summarization. *Journal of Artificial Intelligence Research, Vol. 22*, pp. 457–479.
7. Page, L., et al. (1999). The PageRank Citation Ranking: Bringing Order to the Web *World Wide Web Internet And Web Information Systems*.
8. Torres-Moreno, J.-M. (2014). *Automatic Text Summarization*. Hoboken, NJ, USA: John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
9. Ozsoy, M., Cicekli, I., & Alpaslan, F. (2010). *Text summarization of Turkish texts using Latent Semantic Analysis*. *Proceedings of the 23rd International Conference on Computational Linguistics, № August*, pp. 869–876.
10. Lin, C. Y. (2004). *ROUGE: A Package for Automatic Evaluation of summaries* *Conference: In Proceedings of the Workshop on Text Summarization Branches Out (WAS 2004)*.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 14.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Dinara Rimovna Khairova

Tashkent Institute of Architecture and Construction  
Docent

**SECTION 31. Economic research, finance, innovation, risk management.**

## ISSUES OF IMPROVING URBAN ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT EFFICIENCY AND DEVELOPMENT OF HOUSING AND COMMUNAL ECONOMY IN THE STRENGTHENING URBANIZATION CONDITIONS

**Abstract:** Being an objectively necessary process, urbanization has a significant impact on the urban environment and housing and communal services. These issues are given priority attention in Uzbekistan. Significant success has been achieved both in the provision of housing to the population and in creating a favorable urban environment. The planned urbanization program requires issues rethinking in order to improve urban management itself and housing and utilities development.

**Key words:** management, urbanization, urban environment, housing and communal services development.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Khairova, D. R. (2019). Issues of improving urban environmental management efficiency and development of housing and communal economy in the strengthening urbanization conditions. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 170-178.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-18> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.18>

### Actuality of researching the problems.

In the modern world, urbanization is an objective process that reflects the development of productive forces. The increase in the number of cities, and especially their enlargement, the creation of megacities and conglomerations create various socio-economic problems, associated with the creation and maintenance of an adequate urban infrastructure. Uzbekistan also has these problems because of its regional specificity that has developed.

The actuality of researching the problems of managing urban infrastructure in the conditions of Uzbekistan is, first of all, connected with high rates of demographic growth and urbanization, which have a large-scale impact on the development of cities and towns of the Republic. In modern conditions, housing and communal activities are the organizing principle in the life of the city. It is the basis keeping and developing the city as a human habitat. The generally beneficial nature of public service systems is confirmed by their status of permanent installations, which are ready to meet the needs of the population and the city in the relevant services.

In modern conditions, housing and communal services is a complex of sub-sectors, designed to ensure the conditions of normal life of the population

and the urban structures functioning. Housing and communal services form the living environment of humans in significant way. It ensures the comfort of the city, the district, the neighborhood and the dwelling. On the one hand, this industry is under the influence of developing market relations, and on the other, it is an important element of the system of social protection of the population.

It is obvious that housing and communal services is a service industry and the most important part of the territorial infrastructure that determines the conditions of human life, the comfort of dwelling, engineering improvement, quality and reliability of transport, communications, household and other services as they influence health, quality of life and social climate of the urban environment.

As a rule, the housing and utilities sector has the following sub-sectors:

- housing and maintenance services;
- water supply and sanitation;
- municipal energy (electricity, heat, gas);
- urban public transport;
- information services (cable networks,

satellite television, fiber optic systems and electronic communication channels, computer software and communication systems);

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

- external urban improvement, including road facilities and road construction;
- sanitary cleaning of territories (street cleaning, house cleaning with utilization of household and food waste);
- green farming services (urban greening, floriculture);
- hotel industry;
- consumer services (baths, laundries, ritual services);
- street lighting.

Each of these sub-sectors is currently undergoing profound innovative technological-technological transformations. The purposes of these transformations are:

- expanding the sub-industry functions and providing additional options and services on this basis;
- improving the quality of standard services;
- ensuring a higher level of resource conservation;
- reducing material costs for the production of used units and devices;
- providing the environmental protection.

It should be noted that the environmental protection has a dynamically increasing priority. It is obviously due to the increase in the city sizes, motorization, consumption of goods and, in general, anthropogenic impact on the environment.

The process of innovative renewal in this area is continuous and accelerating when the emergence of the subsequent innovative technology "B" comes before the moment of physical wear of the equipment of the previous technology "A". The presence of such a phenomenon becomes more normal and, of course, it requires the research, as there are large reserves of resource savings.

One of the important courses of socio-economic development in Uzbekistan has been the intensification of the urbanization process. Thus, in the Message of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan to the Oliy Majlis dated December 28, 2018, it is noted that "Today the level of urbanization in the country is 35.5 percent, and if you do not take any actions today, then there is a possibility of a decrease in this indicator." That is why the country plans to "develop a State Program in order to increase the level of urbanization in the country up to 60 percent by 2030". Here, of course, it is necessary to take into account any development related to renovation [5], as it allows merging two processes into one: demolishing obsolete housing and building modern comfortable residential buildings.

The development of urbanization is an objective process that positively affects macroeconomic indicators. Thus, currently in Uzbekistan over 70 percent of GDP is created in cities at a specified level of urbanization. Even if we consider that there is a

certain disproportion in the prices of industrial and agricultural products, the contribution of citizens to the creation of GDP per capita is several times greater than the contribution of villagers.

Certainly, urbanization development will affect significantly and qualitatively the considerable complication of housing and utilities management, as the growth in management complexity depends on the increase in city sizes, and it is not linear. And, in certain conditions some new factors appear. Considering these phenomena from a theoretical perspective, there are grounds to confirm the opinions of a number of researchers that at the present stage of development of the productive forces, the society itself shows the singularity of development increasingly.

In the conditions of urbanization growth, non-traditional, innovative solutions are needed, as they will ensure a qualitatively new development in such sectors as healthcare, transport, energy and infrastructure. One such solution, for example, is the concept of a "smart city", aiming to ensure the modern quality of life, comfort and stability of the urban population using innovative technologies that provide economical and environmentally friendly use of urban living systems. It is discussed below.

One of the factors shaping the life support of the population is the development of the housing and public utilities sector of the republic, which is the most important part of the territorial infrastructure. It can be stated that the effectiveness of public services forms not only an adequate quality of life for the population, reflecting the degree of society civilization, culture, its welfare and lifestyle, but also serves as one of the most important prerequisites for the development of economic potential, as well as creates the condition for attracting investment.

It should be noted that the sectoral feature of public services is the technologically determined by monopolistic position of enterprises and the close relationship between enterprises in various fields of activity. Another feature is the strictly local production process and the consumption of utilities, their non-interchangeability, the impossibility of delivering services from the outside sources or receiving them somewhere outside the city or the region.

The main feature of housing and communal services, which must necessarily be taken into account when developing measures to increase efficiency, is a pronounced social focus of activities: provision of vital services to all members of society without exception. In turn, this predetermines the primary role of local government bodies and authorities in ensuring the standard functioning and development of the industry with the methodological, legal, scientific, and technical support of republican government bodies. In this case, special attention is paid to the development of engineering infrastructure - this issue is classified

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

as a priority. It should be noted here that the state of engineering communications in the post-Soviet territory, almost everywhere, leaves much to be desired. This negatively affects not only the quality of life, but also all sectors of the economy.

That is why the housing and communal services development policy is based on the priority provision of settlements with roads, water, gas, communications, and electricity in order to create favorable conditions both for living and locating manufacturing enterprises and attracting investments in their development.

It should also be noted that, in accordance with the decree of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan “On measures for the further implementation and development of modern information and communication technologies” dated March 21, 2012, the Center for the Development and Implementation of Computer and Information Technologies “UZINFOCOM” was given the task to create unified Internet portal housing services. The main purpose of the portal is to create a common communication infrastructure in the housing and utilities sector, which will simplify the exchange of information between the population, regulatory agencies and the Municipal ATP, makhallas (city blocks), as well as public utilities. It will allow establishing feedback and establishing transparent control over the targeted use of public funds, which, in turn, should contribute to improving the quality of utilities provided.

Currently, the portal operates in test mode and is available at e-kommunal.uz, there a single database of public utilities and social services is being formed.

Creation of the portal is the initial stage of transition to digital format and has a number of obvious and encouraging advantages, which are as follows:

- the part of the population that is experiencing difficulties due to lack of time or for some other reasons, especially those with physical disabilities, who are not able to visit the Center for the provision of public services, can use the services of the “Electronic Portal” and solve all issues on-line;
- the work of the state and municipal servants themselves is greatly simplified;
- the use of such a management system also leads to the reduction of criminality (reducing the possibility of bribery).

It is obvious that the provision of housing to the population is not only a priority social problem, but also one of the mandatory attributes providing and posing standard functioning of a person. It means that it carries an important social burden, consisting of providing favorable conditions for the creation and development of the primary cell of society - the family. Developing it, it can be noted that one of the historically established brackets of the national mentality of the Uzbek people is the family, in

Uzbekistan the development of housing construction and housing maintenance in Uzbekistan has always been a problem that requires serious and constant attention from the State itself. The evidence of it, many Decrees of the President of the Republic and Resolutions of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Uzbekistan. Such close attention to the issue of housing provision is also caused by the current demographic situation and the presence of internal migration.

The Strategy of Action approved by the President of Uzbekistan in five priority areas of the country's development in 2017–2021, developed on the basis of a comprehensive research of topical and affecting all strata of the population and entrepreneurs, analysis of legislation, law enforcement practice and foreign experience, highlights one of the priorities - the development of the social sphere. It states for:

- implementation of targeted programs for the construction of affordable housing, the development and modernization of road transport, engineering, communication and social infrastructure in order to improve living conditions for the population;
- further improvement of the living conditions of the population, especially young families (due to the demographic features of Uzbekistan as a significant proportion of this category of the population), residents of dilapidated houses and other categories of citizens who need better housing conditions by providing mortgage loans on favorable terms and affordable housing in cities and rural areas;
- increasing the level of provision with public utilities, and above all, drastically improving the provision of the population in rural areas with clean drinking water through the construction of new water lines and the consistent introduction of modern, cost-effective and efficient technologies;
- ensuring the environmental safety of human habitation, construction and modernization of household waste processing facilities, strengthening their material and technical base, providing the population with modern waste disposal facilities;
- radical improvement of transport services to the population, improvement of passenger traffic safety and reduction of harmful emissions into the atmosphere, renewal of the urban public transport via the acquisition of new comfortable buses, construction and reconstruction of bus terminals and bus stations;
- further construction and reconstruction of road infrastructure, primarily the development of regional highways, major and current repairs of inter-farm rural highways, streets of inhabited localities;
- provision improvement of electric power to the population on the basis of building new and modernizing existing power generating capacities, updating low-voltage electrical networks and transformer stations, and implementing measures to

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

improve the provision of other fuel and energy resources to the population and expanding the use of renewable energy sources.

One of the important issues is the Program for the Development of the Service sector in 2016–2020 in the Republic (Table 1).

In order to improve the quality of services provided for comfortable living of citizens, the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Uzbekistan decides considering the priorities and objectives in the development of the service sector in the Republic of Uzbekistan in 2016–2020:

- an increase in the gross domestic product due to the development of the service sector, bringing its share in the economy of the republic to 60 percent;
- the growth of services in rural areas by 2020 by 1.8 times;
- the creation of conditions for the fast development of the service sector, structural changes

due to the development of engineering and communication, road and transport infrastructure, implementation of modern information and communication technologies in the sectors;

- the expansion of a variety of innovative services and new means of communication;
- ensuring the technical possibilities of accessibility of the population to the telecommunications network, providing quality services on their basis, full transition to digital telephone and television systems, bringing the share of communication services and informatization in the republic's economy to 2.5 percent by 2020;
- the development of financial services with the introduction of the latest electronic, payment technologies;
- further development of high-tech services in the health sector.

**Table 1. TARGET PARAMETERS**  
**Development of the service sector in the Republic of Uzbekistan in 2016 – 2020**

№	Services list	2020 by % to 2015
	<b>The Republic of Uzbekistan</b>	<b>1,8 times</b>
	<i>Including:</i>	
1.	communication and information services	2,9 times
2.	financial services	1,8 times
3.	transportation services	1,5 times
3.1	including motor transport services	1,5 times
4.	accommodation and food services	1,8 times
5.	trade services	1,6 times
6.	real estate related services	1,5 times
7.	educational services	1,5 times
8.	health services	1,9 times
9.	rental and rental services	1,8 times
10.	computers and household goods repair services	1,6 times
11.	individual services	1,7 times
12.	services in the field of architecture, engineering research, technical testing and analysis	1,7 times
13.	other services	1,8 times

At the same time, the share of services in GDP in 2019 should be 59.5%.

To increase the efficiency of housing and public utilities search ways are carried out in all CIS countries. The range of research covers all activities in both urban infrastructure and the management of apartment buildings [10,11,12]. Some research works clarify the role of state bodies and business structures in the management of housing and public utilities [10], determine the strategic priorities for the modernization of housing and utilities management [11]. Options for managing households in apartment buildings are being considered [12].

As it is known, high population growth and household structure (HS) significantly influence the housing sector, the demand for housing, thereby

causing a high load on the existing engineering infrastructure and land use.

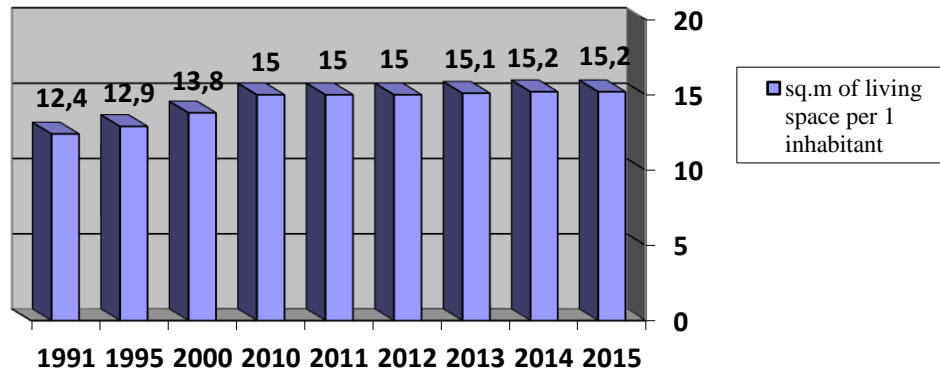
During the years of independent development of our country the housing sector has shown positive results, in particular in 1991, the total area of the housing stock was 258.4 million square meters, and by the end of 2016–2017, it reached 477.8 million square meters. It means the increase was 1.9 times.

Over the past 28 years, the population of Uzbekistan has grown by more than 1.5 times. Thus, if in 1990 the population of the country was about 20.0 million people, so as for the April 1, 2019 it reached 33.375 million people. Despite a serious demographic burden, Uzbekistan has achieved a steady growth in the provision of housing to the population - per person

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

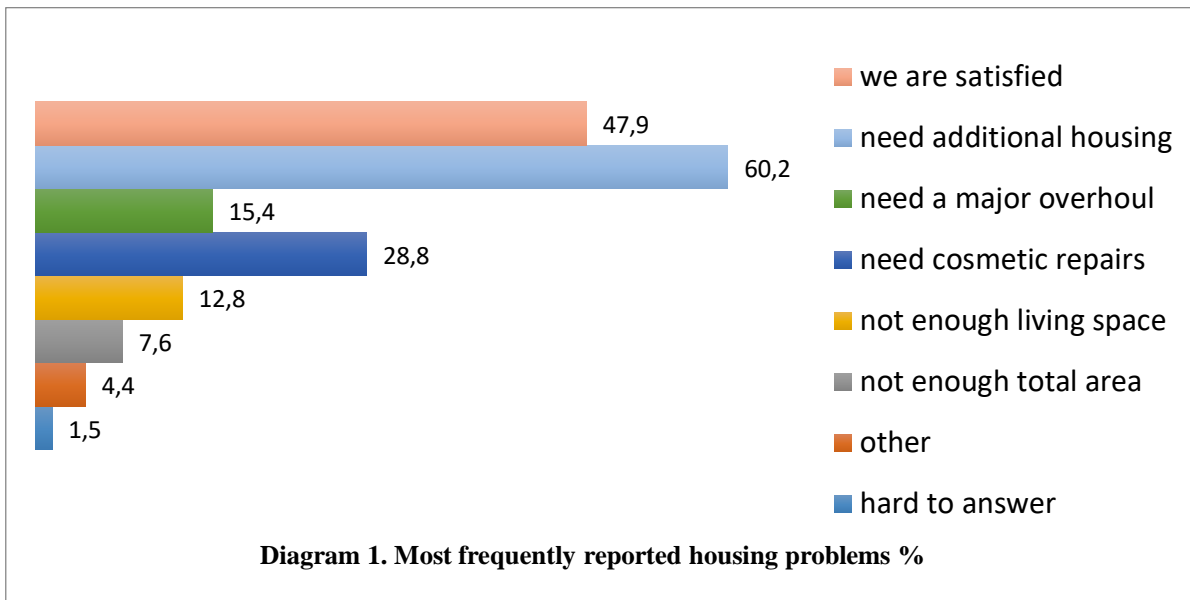
from 12.4 to 15.5 square meters. (fig. 1) [9,10]. So, the growth was 1.2 times.



**Figure 1. Provision of housing in 1991-2015**

In 2016, the Institute of Social Research conducted a sociological survey of 1008 rural households in three regions of the Republic of Uzbekistan, they are Khorezm, Fergana, and Kashkadarya regions with a direct study of living conditions. The selected regions reflect typical climatic (desert, flat, and mountainous areas), socio-economic, and demographic characteristics of many regions of the republic and present the necessary information base to obtain data.

As the analysis showed a number of systemic problems, despite the positive changes in the improvement of living conditions (Diagram 1). The main problem, namely 60.2% of households in rural areas need additional housing, 15.4% need major repairs, 12.8% of respondents indicated that there is not enough living space, and 7.6% said that the total area is not enough plot.



**Diagram 1. Most frequently reported housing problems %**

The most frequent highlighted problems are the need in additional housing territory and lack of housing space, primarily from the HS consisting of 5 or more members, as well as a high concentration of families living in the same HS (2-3 or even 4 families), i.e. high demographic load. In general, the main housing problem in the countryside is the need based on the constant growth in the number of household members.

Thus, Uzbekistan is developing a new program for the construction of affordable housing in rural areas for 2017-2021 (Pic. 2)

Only in 2017, 2 trillion 121 billion soums were allocated to finance the program. It is planned to attract credit resources of commercial banks in the amount of more than 2 trillion soums (about 675 million dollars).

The measures taken contribute to provide families with modern, high-quality, comfortable

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

housing and form a new engineering and communication, social and market infrastructure in the countryside. It allows raising the image of the

village to a qualitatively new level and, on this basis, raising the standard of living and changing the outlook of the rural population.



Picture 2. Typical rural housing project

As a result of the analysis of the demographic situation in the country, the state of the housing stock and its growth rates, it can be concluded that construction volumes in Uzbekistan are not sufficient, and to achieve the level of developed countries, it is necessary to take extraordinary measures.

As international experience shows the state of urban infrastructure occupies an important place in the strategy of modernizing any state and raising the industrial and innovative level of the national economy. It, in turn, necessitates the creation of an effective system of urban infrastructure management, based on a new mechanism of territorial management and a strategic approach to urban development. Such mechanism should be focused on improving the quality of life of the population, on strengthening the economic independence of cities, on improving the efficiency and complexity of their development, on creating favorable conditions for the competitive functioning of market structures and attracting investment resources.

Accessibility of services is a characteristic feature of housing and public utilities. The vital and irreplaceable nature of the consumption of utilities requires to be equally accessible to all who need them, and be always available when they are needed, regardless of the solvency of consumers. The more reliable and efficient the functioning of the engineering systems of the city are more convenient, comfortable and favorable, the urban environment is perceived for the population and the functioning of various organizations. Full or general availability of services is an indicator of comfort and quality of modern housing.

The main objectives of the ongoing modernization of housing and communal services are:

- improving the quality of housing and communal services, provided to the public;
- attracting private investment in the industry;
- reducing the costs of housing production utilities;
- improving the sustainability of the industry.

World practice shows that in order to meet the challenges of developing urban infrastructure successfully, it is necessary to create an effective system for its management, based on a modern mechanism of territorial management and a strategic approach to the city development.

Such mechanism should be focused on improving the quality of life of the population, strengthening the economic independence and importance of cities, increasing the efficiency and comprehensiveness of the development of the territory, creating favorable conditions for the competitive functioning of market structures and attracting investment resources. The key element in the improvement of infrastructure management is a significant increase in the role and responsibility of city and district authorities (hokimiyats).

The goal of improving the organizational structures for managing urban infrastructure in Uzbekistan is to optimize costs, ensure a high level of manageability, improve the quality of services, and the responsibility of departments for the results of their activities. At the same time, the urban infrastructure management scheme, as well as the mechanisms for financing life-support facilities,



**Impact Factor:**

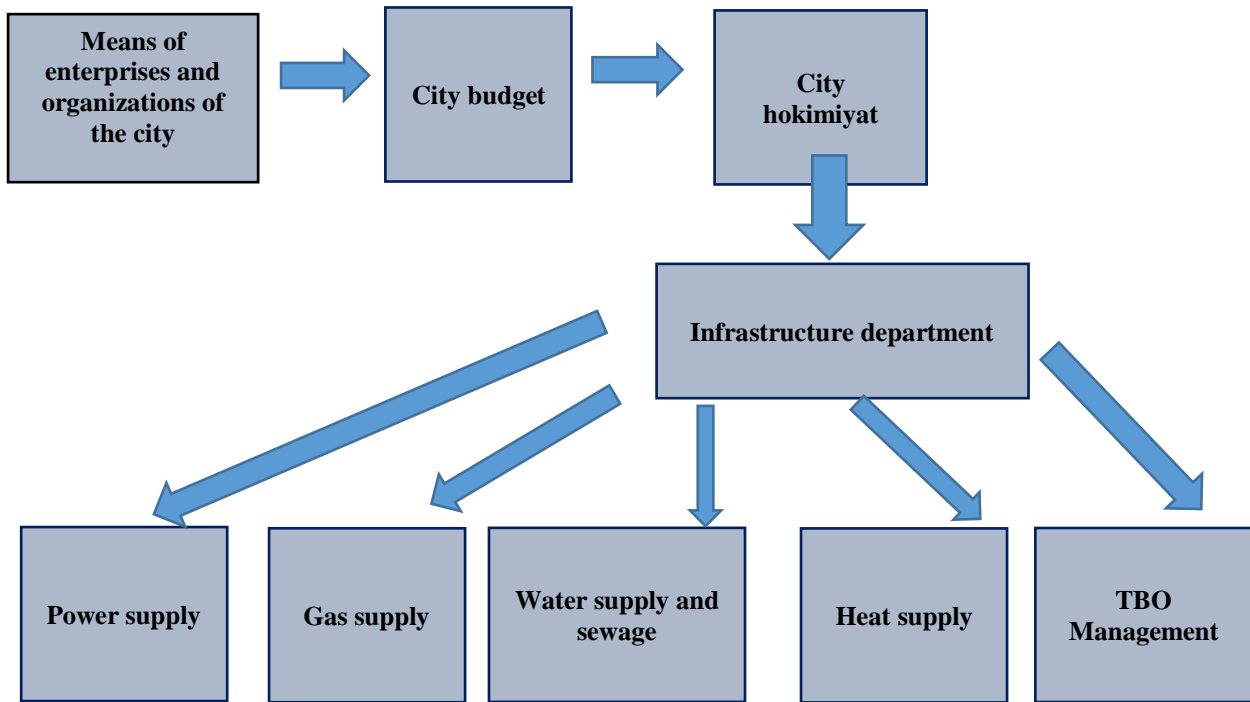
<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350

should correspond to the scale of demographic, migration and urbanization processes in the republic.

1. In order to ensure a faster pace of development of infrastructure and favorable conditions in cities, it seems expedient to establish a

City Infrastructure Management Department (hereinafter referred to as the Department).

2. The department should have the status of a single owner of the infrastructure of the city and the state customer (Figure 2).



**Figure 3 - Schematic diagram of the organization of the municipal order and the financing of urban infrastructure.**

3. The property of the Department is formed at the expense of the property assigned by the founder. It implies the transfer of all water supply, sewage, heat supply, gas supply, and power supply facilities located in the city (district) in the manner prescribed by law to the ownership of the hokimiyat. The transfer process of gas supply and power supply facilities and networks located in cities to the balance of the city hokimiyat will have a multiplicative effect on management efficiency. It enable JSC “Uzbekenergo” and JC “Uztransgaz” to be relieved of inappropriate functions.

All day-to-day work, including ensuring payment discipline, maintaining urban gas / electricity systems, will be assigned to the Department, which will represent the interests of the city to deal with JSC “Uzbekenergo” and JC “Uztransgaz”. In this case, Uzbekenergo and Uztransgaz can concentrate their efforts on strategic issues of increasing the generating and transporting capacities, introducing energy-saving technologies and others.

4. The creation of the Department will ensure:

- rational use of budgetary funds allocated for the maintenance, repair and development of urban infrastructure;

- a clear separation of the functions of the customer and the contractor in this area;
- elimination of duplication of control and management, improvement of the efficiency of the public sector;
- strict accounting for material and cash expenses;
- balanced development of infrastructure sectors;
- attraction to this area of high technology;
- the stability of the staffing industry;
- organization of contractual conditions in the field of public services, protection of consumer interests;
- attraction of small business and private entrepreneurship infrastructure projects;
- guidance of payment discipline, reduction of receivables and payables;
- the use of progressive forms, mechanisms and tariff and non-tariff regulation tools;
- increasing the responsibility of market participants for the provision of quality services.

5. The provision of all types of services should be carried out on the basis of contracts between the

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India)	= 3.117	SIS (USA)	= 0.912	ICV (Poland)	= 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE)	= 0.829	PIHHI (Russia)	= 0.156	PIF (India)	= 1.940
GIF (Australia)	= 0.564	ESJI (KZ)	= 8.716	IBI (India)	= 4.260
JIF	= 1.500	SJIF (Morocco)	= 5.667	OAJI (USA)	= 0.350

supplier and the buyer of services. Some infrastructure facilities may be transferred to private companies on contractual terms, for example, management of municipal solid waste (in this case, tariff regulation should remain with the Department). In accordance with the established procedure, the Department selects a non-profit management company with the inclusion of its representatives in its board of managers. The department applies various schemes for attracting citizens' self-government organizations to the management sector.

Thus, the experience of developed countries indicates the direct dependence of the GDP growth rate on the level of urban development. And the level of urban development, in turn, directly depends on the capacity, sustainable operation of infrastructure facilities and the quality of management of urban infrastructure. In this regard, in most developed countries, urban infrastructure is owned and operated directly by city (municipal) authorities. It is obvious that the state resources allocated for the development and support of infrastructure are not highly profitable. Nevertheless, it is the infrastructure that has a multiplicative effect on attracting foreign direct investment (FDI), the development of cities as centers of industrial-innovative development, and an increase in the quality of life of the urban population.

In recent years, huge state investments have been made for the construction, reconstruction and modernization of the integrated system of the urban infrastructure of the Republic of Uzbekistan. All spheres of urban infrastructure and public utilities, the state and local budget are being reformed step by step.

At the same time, high rates of demographic growth, concentration in the cities of industrial production, development and other factors put forward entirely new and increased demands on the urban infrastructure. On the one hand, new challenges in this area are connected with the acceleration of urbanization, the implementation of modernization programs, technical and technological renewal of key industries, the creation of the modern appearance of cities that are not inferior to international standards.

On the other hand, the challenges are related to the exacerbation of problems of heat supply, water supply, sewage, energy supply and municipal waste management, a drop in capacity, an increase in non-production costs, depletion of engineering communications resources, a decrease in technical and technological potential of a number of infrastructure sectors, a sharp increase in receivables and payables.

The key problem of the sector is the inconsistency of the institutional system, methods and mechanisms of managing the urban infrastructure with the modern requirements of fast industrial and innovative development of the country's economy. By further delegating the powers of the central government and local administration, increasing the competence and responsibility of local government bodies, as well as the role of the local budget it would be possible to build a proper system for managing urban infrastructure.

Thus, in the context of urbanization, the issues of increasing efficiency and improving housing management are of particular importance. In Uzbekistan, despite the difficult demographic situation, positive results have been achieved in the growth of housing provision, in the growth of improvement of cities and rural settlements. In general, the problems under consideration are of a priority nature and are under scrutiny from state bodies in Uzbekistan.

The accelerated urbanization program outlined in the country poses new challenges in the housing and utilities sector. Based on the experience of developed countries and taking into account the peculiarities of modern development of urban infrastructure, and in order to ensure faster rates of infrastructure development and favorable conditions in cities, it seems expedient to create a Department of Urban Infrastructure Management at khokimiyats. It will improve the level of manageability and quality of service.

## References:

- (2017). Edict of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan "On the strategy of actions for the further development of the Republic of Uzbekistan" No. EP-4947, dated February 7, 2017. Retrieved 2019, from <http://nrm.uz/contentf>
- (n.d.). Resolution of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan "On measures for the further implementation and development of modern information and communication technologies" dated March 21, 2012y No. RP 1730. (Collection of Legislation of the Republic of Uzbekistan, 2012y, No. 13, Article 139, 2013y, No. 44, Resolution Art. 584; 2017, No. 2, Art. 25 National Legislation Database, 01.12.2017y, No. 07/17/3415/0345)
- (n.d.). Resolution of the Cabinet of Ministers of February 26, 2016y No. 55 "On the Program for

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

- the Development of the Service Sector for 2016–2020y” - Collected Legislation of the Republic of Uzbekistan, 2016y, No. 9, Art. 89, No. 27, Art. 326; 2017y, No. 15, Art. 257, No. 33, Art. 863
- (2013). *Urbanization in Central Asia: challenges, problems and prospects*. (Analytical report 2013/03). Tashkent, Center for Economic Research.
  - Krylov, V. A., & Mokronosov, A. G. (2000). *Formation and development of the market of housing and communal services*. Ekaterinburg: Ekaterinburg publishing house.
  - (2006). *Rules and regulations of the technical operation of the housing stock*. MZHKH-M: Stroizdat.
  - (2000). Housing and utilities. *Journal of the head and chief accountant*.
  - Kruglikov, A. A. (2006). State policy in the sphere of housing and communal services. *Journal of the head and chief accountant of housing and public utilities, №7*.
  - Khokhlov, O. B. (2015). *Evaluation of the effectiveness of projects and programs for the renovation of the housing stock*. Thesis on the competition, academic degree: candidate of economic sciences, TUAC, p.135.
  - Kozhevnikov, S. A. (2015). *The interaction of government and business structures in managing the economy of the European north of Russia in the field of housing and public utilities*. Thesis on the competition, academic degree: candidate of economic sciences, Vologda, Institute of Socio-Economic Development of the Territories, RAS, p.161.
  - Melnikov, P. S. (2010). *Strategic priorities of modernization of management of the sphere of housing-and-municipal services, abstract-dissertation, academic degree: candidate of economic sciences*, Shakhty, SEI, HVE, Russian State Social University, p.228.
  - Buryak, A. S., & Leonova, Z. K. (2016). The problem of choosing a management model in multi-apartment buildings. *Internet-journal "SCIENCE" Volume 8, №4*. <http://naukovedenie.ru/PDF/56EYN416.pdf>
  - (2014). *Housing of Uzbekistan* (brief review). (pp.10-11). Tashkent. [www.unece.org](http://www.unece.org)
  - (2016). *Social development and living standards in Uzbekistan*. Statistical compilation of the State Statistics Committee of the Republic of Uzbekistan.
  - (2017). Statistical compilation "Construction in Uzbekistan".
  - (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <http://rb.ru/story/smart-future/>
  - (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <http://greencapacity.ru/ru/information/smart-cities>
  - (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <https://www.gazeta.uz>
  - (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <http://www.trend.az/casia/uzbekistan/2676791.html>
  - (n.d.). Retrieved 2019, from <http://www.UzDaily.uz>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHII (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 15.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



### SECTION 9: Chemistry and chemical technology

**Oleg Ivanovych Yurchenko**

Kharkiv V.N. Karazin National University,  
PhD, Full Professor of  
Chemical Metrology Department,  
[yurchenko@karazin.ua](mailto:yurchenko@karazin.ua)

**Tetyana Vasylivna Chernozhuk**

Kharkiv V.N. Karazin National University,  
PhD, Associate  
Professor of Inorganic Chemistry Department,  
[tanya.chernozhuk@gmail.com](mailto:tanya.chernozhuk@gmail.com)

**Oleksii Andriiovych Kravchenko**

Kharkiv V.N. Karazin National University,  
PhD, Associate  
Professor of Chemical Metrology Department,  
[alekseykravch@ukr.net](mailto:alekseykravch@ukr.net)

## ATOMIC ABSORPTION AND ATOMIC EMISSION WITH INDUCTIVE CONNECTED PLASMA DETERMINATION OF ZINC, IRON AND MANGANESE IN SALT MINES OF BAHMUT CITY

**Abstract:** Sensitivity and accuracy of atomic-absorption and atomic-emission with inductive connected plasma determination of the analytes in the salt samples, using ultrasound treatment, surface active substances (Triton X-100) and new standard composition samples, based on acetylacetonates of metals, was increased. An influence of Triton X-100 concentration ant time of ultrasound treatment on the magnitude of analytical signal of the determined analytes was investigated. It was shown that maximal analytical signal occurs at  $\omega$  of (Triton X-100) = 3% and ultrasound treatment during 20 minutes. Content of Zinc, Iron and Manganese was determined by two methods. An accuracy of the results of atomic-absorption measurements was checked by the “injected-found out” method. An absence of the systematic error was determined by variation of masses of the samples. The results, obtained by two methods, were compared. It was proved that run of the means is not sufficient and proved by random scatter. The limit of the analytes determination by atomic-absorption method is lower, than corresponding data from literature.

**Key words:** Iron, Zinc, Manganese, atomic-absorption and atomic-emission with inductive connected plasma spectroscopy, sample preparation, Triton X-100, ultrasound, standard composition samples, metrological characteristics

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Yurchenko, O. I., Chernozhuk, T. V., & Kravchenko, O. A. (2019). Atomic absorption and atomic emission with inductive connected plasma determination of zinc, iron and manganese in salt mines of Bahmut city. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 179-185.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-19> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.19>

### Introduction

Chemical pollution is a global concern for environmental and food safeties. Heavy metals affect the functioning of the central nervous system, change the composition of the blood and disrupt the functions of organs. The negative ecological situation is influenced by direct anthropogenic action (biological

processes, weathering), so as by indirect anthropogenic action [1,p.610]. The trace elements are an important aspect of the quality of food, and also can cause a carcinogenic effect on living organisms [2, p.123; 3, p.112; 4, p.405], so it is necessary to establish control over their content [2,p.79].

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

### Materials and Methods

Sodium chloride is the most important raw material for industry and the most essential kind of nutrition. Salt is a regulator of osmotic pressure, water exchange, and necessary for the formation of hydrochloric acid in the process of gastric secretion and activates enzymes. Zinc, Manganese, and Iron are biologically active analytes. According to supplement No. 3 due to the sanitary-anti-epidemic and sanitary-anti-toxicological rules of health and hygiene rules and standards (HaHRaS) of Ukraine 42-123-4089 standards, the content of zinc in the kitchen salt should not exceed 10 mg/kg, and the contents of Manganese and Iron are not regulated [3,p.112].

However, at present, there are no standard methods for determining Zinc, Manganese, and Iron. The literature describes the methods for determining analytes in various multicomponent samples by modern analytical methods: atomic absorption spectroscopy [4,p.407; 5,p.6620;6,p.12], atomic emission spectroscopy with inductively coupled plasma [7,p.365;8,p.332], mass-spectroscopy with inductively coupled plasma [9,p.3;10,p.164;11,p.20], X-ray fluorescence analysis [12,p.7864;13,p.7; 14,p.320;15,p.4537]. An important role in the analysis of multicomponent systems is played by modern methods of sample preparation of the analyzed samples [16,p.4;17,p.3;18,p.10;19,p.5;20,p.5691; 21,p.607;22,p.346]. Reliable determination of trace elements in samples is necessary because they influence on human health [23,p.4;24,p.395; 25,p.110;26,p.4].

The goal of our work is to develop a competitive method of atomic absorption and atomic emission with inductively coupled plasma for the determination of analytes in multicomponent samples using ultrasonic processing, surfactants, and metal acetylacetonates as standard samples of the composition.

### Experimental

The atomic absorption spectrometer C-115M-1 (flame-acetylene-air) and hollow cathode lamps were used in this work. Measurements were carried out at the following wavelengths  $\lambda$  nm: for Zn-213.86; Fe-259.94; Mn-257.61. To account for the effect of nonresonance (nonselective) absorption, the deuterium background correction was used. An atomic emission spectrometer with an inductively coupled plasma iCAP 6300 Duo, Thermo Scientific, USA was used. Parameters of determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese by the method of atomic emission spectrometry with inductively coupled plasma are represented as follows: the rate of plasma-forming flow of argon-12 l/min; plasma power-1350 W; speed of the auxiliary flow of argon-1.5 l/min; plasma-axial monitoring mode was taken; flow of argon at flux-0.55 l/min; pump speed-50 rpm;

integration time of signal-20s; 5 parallel measurements were taken.

Ultrasonic bath PS-20, power of 120 W with a frequency of 40 kHz, laboratory weights OHAUS PA (65 / 0.0001g), Triton X-100  $C_{14}H_{22}O(C_2H_4O)_n$ , where  $n = 9-10$ ,  $M_r \sim 646$  g/mol, CMC (*critical micelle concentration*) =  $2.9 \cdot 10^{-4}$  mol/l, acetylacetone, zinc, Iron and manganese acetylacetonates. The initial concentration of metal solutions for the preparation of solutions of solvents is 0.1 g/l. Standard samples of solutions of Zinc, Iron, and Manganese with a concentration of 1 g/l are made at the Physico-Chemical Institute of the National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine (Odesa). When using experimental work, distilled water and chemical reagents of qualification are used not lower than ch.p. (*chemically pure*).

Samples from saline deposits weighing 0.3 g (weighed with deviation 0.0001 g) were dissolved in 10 ml of 1.5% nitric acid (an optimal analytical signal with a flame atomic absorption determination of the analytes), sonicated for 20 minutes, and 2 ml was added. Triton X-100 with  $\omega = 3\%$ ; 0.5 ml acetylacetone, were thoroughly mixed and quantitatively transferred to a 25 ml flask.

Four samples from the salt deposits of the city of Bakhmut - mine No. 1, 3, section 3 (marked as sample No. 1); mine number 4 (sample No. 2); mine №7 (sample No. 3) and the Volodarsky mine (sample No. 4). Of each sample, five samples were selected for analysis.

### Results and discussion

The study of the influence of Triton X-100 on the magnitude of the analytical signal, depending on the concentration of surfactant (Table 1), was carried out.

As can be seen from Table 1, the greatest value of the analytical signal at atomic absorption determination of analytes is achieved using Triton X-100 with  $\omega = 3\%$ .

Adding aqueous solutions of Triton X-100 with  $\omega = 3\%$  to solution samples decreases the surface tension of solutions decreases and the dispersion of the solution increases, which in the flame atomic adsorption leads to complete atomization of solutions and increases the sensitivity of the determination of analytes from 1.6 to 2.0 times. Sensitivity is determined by the formula:

$$S = tg\alpha = \frac{dA}{dC}.$$

The rise in the sensitivity of the definitions compared with water solutions and solutions treated with ultrasound with additives Triton X-100:

$$\Delta S = \frac{tg\alpha_1}{tg\alpha_2},$$

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
 ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
 GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
 JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
 PIIHJ (Russia) = 0.156  
 ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
 SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
 PIF (India) = 1.940  
 IBI (India) = 4.260  
 OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Metal acetylacetonates are formed in the solution by adding acetylacetone to this solution. Therefore, using metal  $\beta$ -diketonates as standard samples of the composition, we increase the precision and accuracy of the analysis, as the analyzed substances in the chemical composition are similar to the calibration.

The influence of the time of ultrasound sample processing on the size of the analytical signal under atomic absorption determination of the analytes (Table 2) was also investigated.

It is shown that the greatest value of the analytical signal at atomic absorption determination of analytes is achieved by ultrasound processing for 20 minutes.

The content of analytes in samples of sodium chloride was determined by methods of atomic absorption and atomic emission spectroscopy with inductively coupled plasma (Table 3-4).

The verification of the correctness of the results of the determination of analytes by the atomic absorption method was carried out by the method "introduced-found" (Table 5).

Methyl acetylacetonates were added to the sample mass, and then all the stages of the sampling preparation, which are described in the experimental part, were passed by the samples.

The consistency of the results of determination of analytes by atomic absorption and atomic emission techniques with inductively coupled plasma spectroscopy in samples of stone salt was carried out according to Fisher and Student's t-test, which is the verification of the correctness of the results of the analysis. (Table 6).

It was found out that the difference between the meanings is not significant and is justified by random distribution.

The systematic error of the results at atomic absorption determination of the analytes by the

variation of the weight of sample weight is estimated (Table 7).

By varying the mass of sample weights, it is shown that there is no significant systematic error.

The boundary of detection of analytes by an atomic absorption method is estimated in the above-mentioned methodology. For 20 blank samples, the analytical signal (A) was determined, the standard deviation of the background was calculated according to the formula

$$S_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\sum(\bar{A} - A)^2}{n - 1}}$$

Then the limit of detection of analytes was calculated

$$C_{min} = \frac{3S_0}{S}$$

Detection of Zinc, Iron, and Manganese by AAS method is for Zinc - 0.001  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , Iron - 0.003  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , Manganese - 0.001  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , respectively, which are listed below in the periodical literature.

The limits of the detection of AES-ICP for Zinc - 0.002  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , Iron - 0.002  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , manganese - 0.001  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , which are listed below in the periodical literature.

## Conclusions

The method of atomic absorption and atomic emission with inductively coupled plasma with improved metrological characteristics has been developed by using ultrasonic testing, aqueous solutions of Triton X-100 and acetylacetonate analytes as standard samples of the composition.

**Table 1. Selection of the Triton X-100 concentration for the atomic absorption determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese (n = 5, P = 0.95).**

$\omega$ (Triton X-100),%	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
	$C, \text{ mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{ mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{ mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{ mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$
Zinc								
3%	10.86±0.02	0.01	8.03±0.03	0.01	8.43±0.04	0.01	8.29±0.02	0.01
4%	9.05±0.04	0.01	7.50±0.02	0.01	7.33±0.02	0.01	7.59±0.03	0.01
5%	8.52±0.01	0.01	7.15±0.03	0.01	6.95±0.03	0.01	7.23±0.04	0.01
6%	8.19±0.02	0.01	6.86±0.03	0.01	6.54±0.03	0.01	6.69±0.04	0.01
Iron								
$\omega, \%$	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
3%	7.23±0.03	0.01	8.90±0.04	0.01	10.06±0.03	0.01	12.16±0.01	0.01

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

4%	7.05±0.02	0.01	8.26±0.03	0.01	9.51±0.02	0.01	11.58±0.02	0.01
5%	6.25±0.03	0.01	7.83±0.04	0.01	8.94±0.02	0.01	10.84±0.04	0.01
6%	5.79±0.03	0.01	7.06±0.02	0.01	8.47±0.04	0.01	9.68±0.02	0.01
Manganese								
$\omega, \%$	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
3%	2.86±0.02	0.01	2.37±0.01	0.01	3.48±0.03	0.01	3.40±0.01	0.01
4%	2.48±0.03	0.01	2.17±0.02	0.01	3.05±0.03	0.01	3.19±0.01	0.01
5%	2.05±0.02	0.01	1.87±0.01	0.01	2.74±0.02	0.01	2.65±0.02	0.01
6%	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

**Table 2. Choose of time of ultrasound treatment at atomic absorption determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese (n = 5, P = 0.95).**

US, min.	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
	$C, \text{mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$	$C, \text{mg/kg}$ $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$
Zinc								
10	7.23±0.03	0.01	7.91±0.03	0.01	7.65±0.03	0.01	8.25±0.02	0.01
15	10.44±0.04	0.01	8.26±0.02	0.01	8.38±0.03	0.01	8.72±0.04	0.01
20	12.29±0.02	0.01	8.61±0.03	0.01	9.40±0.01	0.01	9.84±0.04	0.01
25	11.83±0.03	0.01	8.20±0.02	0.01	8.47±0.03	0.01	9.49±0.03	0.01
Iron								
US, min.	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
10	7.23±0.03	0.01	8.90±0.02	0.01	10.06±0.01	0.01	12.16±0.04	0.01
15	9.45±0.02	0.01	12.54±0.03	0.01	13.72±0.04	0.01	15.93±0.03	0.01
20	11.68±0.03	0.01	14.04±0.03	0.01	15.59±0.03	0.01	17.89±0.03	0.01
25	6.76±0.01	0.01	10.74±0.02	0.01	13.30±0.04	0.01	14.12±0.02	0.01
Manganese								
US, min.	Sample №1		Sample №2		Sample №3		Sample №4	
10	2.86±0.03	0.01	2.37±0.02	0.01	3.48±0.04	0.01	3.40±0.03	0.01
15	2.96±0.03	0.01	2.42±0.03	0.01	3.79±0.03	0.01	3.61±0.03	0.01
20	3.14±0.03	0.01	2.78±0.03	0.01	4.27±0.04	0.01	3.75±0.04	0.01
25	3.05±0.02	0.01	2.59±0.04	0.01	4.03±0.03	0.01	3.54±0.03	0.01

**Table 3. Results of atomic absorption determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese using Triton X-100 ( $\omega = 3\%$ ), stabilized by ultrasound (n = 5, P = 0.95).**

Name of the sample	Concentration, mg/kg $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f}S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$
Zinc		
Mine № 1,3	12.29±0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	8.61±0.04	0.01
Mine № 7	9.40±0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	9.84±0.03	0.01
Iron		
Mine № 1,3	11.68±0.06	0.01
Mine № 4	14.04±0.05	0.01

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHII (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

Mine № 7	15.59±0.04	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	17.87±0.05	0.01
Manganese		
Mine № 1,3	3.14±0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	2.78±0.03	0.01
Mine № 7	4.27±0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	3.75±0.04	0.01

**Table 4. Results of atomic emission with inductively coupled plasma for the determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese using Triton X-100 ( $\omega = 3\%$ ), stabilized by ultrasound ( $n = 5, P = 0.95$ ).**

Name of the sample	Concentration, mg/kg $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f} S}{\sqrt{n}}$	$S_r$
Zinc		
Mine № 1,3	12.33±0.04	0.01
Mine № 4	8.65±0.04	0.01
Mine № 7	9.42±0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	9.87±0.02	0.01
Iron		
Mine № 1,3	11.71±0.04	0.01
Mine № 4	14.08±0.03	0.01
Mine № 7	15.62±0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	17.90±0.05	0.01
Manganese		
Mine № 1,3	3.17±0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	2.81±0.05	0.01
Mine № 7	4.28±0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	3.77±0.04	0.01

**Table 5. Checking the correctness of the results of the atomic absorption determination of Zinc, Iron and Manganese by the method "introduced-found" ( $n = 5, P = 0.95$ ).**

Name of the sample	Contain, mg/kg	Injected, mg/kg	Found out, mg/kg	$S_r$
Zinc				
Mine № 1,3	12.29±0.05	15	27.35±0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	8.61±0.04	10	18.63±0.03	0.01
Mine № 7	9.40±0.05	10	19.38±0.04	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	9.84±0.03	10	19.85±0.05	0.01
Iron				
Mine № 1,3	11.68±0.06	10	21.65±0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	14.04±0.05	15	29.03±0.05	0.01
Mine № 7	15.59±0.04	15	30.63±0.03	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	17.87±0.05	20	37.84±0.05	0.01
Manganese				
Mine № 1,3	3.14±0.05	5	8.15±0.04	0.01
Mine № 4	2.78±0.03	5	7.59±0.05	0.01
Mine № 7	4.27±0.05	5	9.27±0.04	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	3.75±0.04	5	8.73±0.05	0.01



## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

**Table 6. Agreement of the results of determination of analytes obtained by two methods in rock salt samples according to Fisher and Student's t-test. (n = 5; P = 0.95).**

Name of the sample	F	t <sub>1,2</sub>	F	t <sub>1,2</sub>	F	t <sub>1,2</sub>
	Zn		Mn		Fe	
Mine № 1,3	5.10	1.60	5.34	1.77	5.35	1.77
Mine № 4	5.25	1.50	5.35	1.76	5.34	1.78
Mine № 7	5.18	1.50	5.34	1.78	5.36	1.78
Mine of Volodarsky	5.01	1.56	5.35	1.79	5.35	1.79
	F <sub>табл.</sub> = 6.34	t <sub>табл.</sub> = 2.78	F <sub>табл.</sub> = 6.34	t <sub>табл.</sub> = 2.78	F <sub>табл.</sub> = 6.34	t <sub>табл.</sub> = 2.78

**Table 7. Estimation of the systematic error in the atomic absorption determination of Zinc, Iron, and Manganese by varying the mass of sample swab.**

Element, Name of the sample	Mass of the sample, g	Concentration, mg/kg $\bar{C} \pm \frac{t_{p,f} S}{\sqrt{n}}$	S <sub>r</sub>
Zinc, mine № 1, 3	0.2612	12.29 ± 0.05	0.01
	0.3621	12.24 ± 0.08	0.01
	0.4268	12.35 ± 0.06	0.01
Zinc, Mine № 4	0.2609	8.61 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.3633	8.59 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.4461	8.54 ± 0.05	0.01
Zinc, mine №7	0.2603	9.40 ± 0.05	0.01
	0.3203	9.48 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.4258	9.43 ± 0.04	0.01
Zinc, mine of Volodarsky	0.2593	9.80 ± 0.05	0.01
	0.3432	9.79 ± 0.03	0.01
	0.4197	9.84 ± 0.03	0.01
Iron, mine № 1, 3	0.2612	11.68 ± 0.06	0.01
	0.3623	11.70 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.4268	11.72 ± 0.05	0.01
Iron, Mine № 4	0.2609	14.04 ± 0.05	0.01
	0.3633	13.98 ± 0.03	0.01
	0.4461	14.01 ± 0.05	0.01
Iron, mine №7	0.2603	15.59 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.3203	15.61 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.4258	15.58 ± 0.05	0.01
Iron, mine of Volodarsky	0.2593	17.87 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.3432	17.91 ± 0.04	0.01
	0.4197	17.86 ± 0.05	0.01
Name of the sample	Manganese		
Mine № 1,3	0.2612	3.14 ± 0.05	0.01
Mine № 4	0.3609	2.78 ± 0.03	0.01
Mine № 7	0.4603	4.27 ± 0.05	0.01
Mine of Volodarsky	0.5593	3.75 ± 0.04	0.01

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b>	<b>= 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland)</b>	<b>= 6.630</b>
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b>	<b>= 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia)</b>	<b>= 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India)</b>	<b>= 1.940</b>
<b>GIF (Australia)</b>	<b>= 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b>	<b>= 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India)</b>	<b>= 4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b>	<b>= 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b>	<b>= 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA)</b>	<b>= 0.350</b>

**References:**

1. Alzahrani, H. R., & Kumakli, H. (2016). *Arabian Journal of Chemistry*. V.1(163), pp. 605-623.
2. Kulek de Andrade, C., et al. (2017). *J. Food Chem.* - DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2017.07.111>
3. (2017). Mediko-biologični vimogi ta sanitarni normi jakosti proizvodov'choi sirovini harchovih produktiv. *Dopovnennja № 3*, Kyiv, vid-vo standartiv, p.234.
4. Macedo de Oliveira, R., et al. (2016). *Microchemical Journal*. V.1 (124), pp.402 – 409.
5. Rodriagues J. C.. (2008), *J. Agric. Food. Chem.* V. 1 (59).pp. 6616 – 6623.
6. Almeida, J. S., Souza, O. C. C. O., & Teixeira, L. S. G. (2017). *Microchemical Journal*. doi: 10.1016/j.microc.2017.09.012
7. Cindrić, I. J., et al. (2011). *Microchemical Journal*. V.1(99). pp.364 – 369.
8. Pereira Junior, J. B., Dantas, K. G. F. (2016). *Food Chemistry*. V. 1(196), pp.331 – 337.
9. Yanus, R. L., et al. (2014). *Talanta*, V.1(119), pp.1-4.
10. Orecchio, S., et al. (2014). *Microchemical Journal*. V.1(116), pp.163 – 172.
11. Schwertfeger, D. M., et al. (2016). *Anal. Chem.* DOI: 10.1021/acs.analchem.6b02716
12. Orgheda, L. A. D. (2010). *J.Agric.Food Chem.* V.1(53), pp.7863 – 7869.
13. O'neil, G. D., Newton, M. E., & Macpherson, Julie, V. (2015). *Anal.Chem. Publication Date (Web)* DOI: 10.1021/acs.analchem.5b00597.
14. Otaka, A., Hokura, A., & Nakai, I. (2014). *Food Chemistry* V.1(147), pp.318-326.
15. Hutton, L. A., et al. (2014). *J. Anal. Chem.* V. 1(86), pp.4556 – 4572.
16. Husic, S., Murthy, S. K., & Koppes, A. N. (2015). *Anal. Chem.* DOI: 10.1021/acs.analchem.5b04077.
17. Pereira, C. C., et al. (2017). *Food Chemistry*., DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.foodchem.2017.07.112>
18. Clark, K. D., Zhang, C., Jared, L. (2016). *Anal. Chem.*, DOI: 10.1021/acs.analchem.6b02935.
19. Smith, R. M. (2010). *J. of Chr.* V.1(1000), pp.3-27.
20. Corona, T., Iglesias, M., & Antico, E. (2014). *J. Agric.Food.Chem.*, V.1(62), pp.5690 – 5698.
21. Yilmaz, E., & Soylak, M. (2017). *Talanta*. V.1(174), pp.605-609.
22. Matusiewicz, H., Ślachciński, M. (2017). *Microchemical Journal*. V.1(130), pp.345 – 352.
23. de Paula, C. E. R., et al. (2016). *Microchemical Journal*. V. 127, pp.1-6.
24. Tautkus, S. (2010). *J.Serb. Chem. Soc.* V.5(69), pp.393-402.
25. Fakayode, S. O., et al. (2012). *J. of Chem. Educat.* V.1(89), pp.109 – 113.
26. Mollo, A., et al. (2017). *Microchemical Journal*. DOI: 10.1016/j.microc.2017.09.008.

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

SOI: [1.1/TAS](#) DOI: [10.15863/TAS](#)

## International Scientific Journal Theoretical & Applied Science

p-ISSN: 2308-4944 (print) e-ISSN: 2409-0085 (online)

Year: 2019 Issue: 06 Volume: 74

Published: 11.06.2019 <http://T-Science.org>

QR – Issue



QR – Article



Nizomiddin Najmiddin ugli Ochilov  
State Testing Center under the Cabinet of Ministers  
researcher, Republic of Uzbekistan, Tashkent

## THE PRINCIPLE OF THE IMPLEMENTATION OF DRIVERS FOR DEVICES PROTECTED BY LINUX OS

**Abstract:** In this article the principle of implementing a special-purpose device driver for secure Linux operating systems, using the example of a simple character driver is discussed. The main goal is to summarize and form the basic knowledge for writing future kernel modules. To interact with the equipment or perform operations with access to privileged information, the system needs a kernel driver. The Linux kernel module is a compiled binary code that is inserted directly into the Linux kernel, the internal and the least secure shell of executing instructions in the x86-64 processor. Here the code is executed completely without any checks, but at an incredible speed and with access to any system resources. Changing the kernel, you run the risk of losing data. The kernel code does not have standard protection, as in normal Linux applications.

**Key words:** driver, kernel, opening, reading, writing, closing, kernel level, inode, initialization.

**Language:** English

**Citation:** Ochilov, N. N. (2019). The principle of the implementation of drivers for devices protected by Linux OS. *ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science*, 06 (74), 186-191.

**Soi:** <http://s-o-i.org/1.1/TAS-06-74-20> **Doi:**  <https://dx.doi.org/10.15863/TAS.2019.06.74.20>

### INTRODUCTION

The article discusses the principle of implementation of device drivers in secure operating systems (OS) Linux. The solution to this problem is relevant, since the creation of a secure OS causes problems with the interaction of devices. Linux provides a powerful and extensive API for applications, but sometimes it is not enough. A device driver is required to interact with equipment or perform operations. In order to ensure safe operation and safe handling of devices, a program is required [1]. The kernel communicates with devices through the appropriate drivers. A device driver is a collection of functions used to maintain it. One of the most important features of the Linux OS is the ability to dynamically load drivers. With this organization, the driver module becomes part of the kernel and can freely access its functions. In addition, a dynamically loaded driver may in turn be dynamically unloaded. If the driver is not explicitly unloaded, it remains permanently in the system until the next reboot [5].

If the module loads the system immediately after the start of the system starts, then this is the best failure scenario. The larger the code, the greater the risk of

infinite loops and memory leaks. With carelessness, problems will gradually increase as the machine runs. In the end, important data structures and even buffers (intermediate data storage provided by software and intended to be transferred or copied between applications or parts of one application through cut, copy, paste operations) can be overwritten [6].

You can forget the traditional application development paradigms. In addition to loading and unloading a module, you can write code that will respond to system events, but it will not work in a certain sequence [1]. When working with the kernel, you can write an API, not the applications themselves.

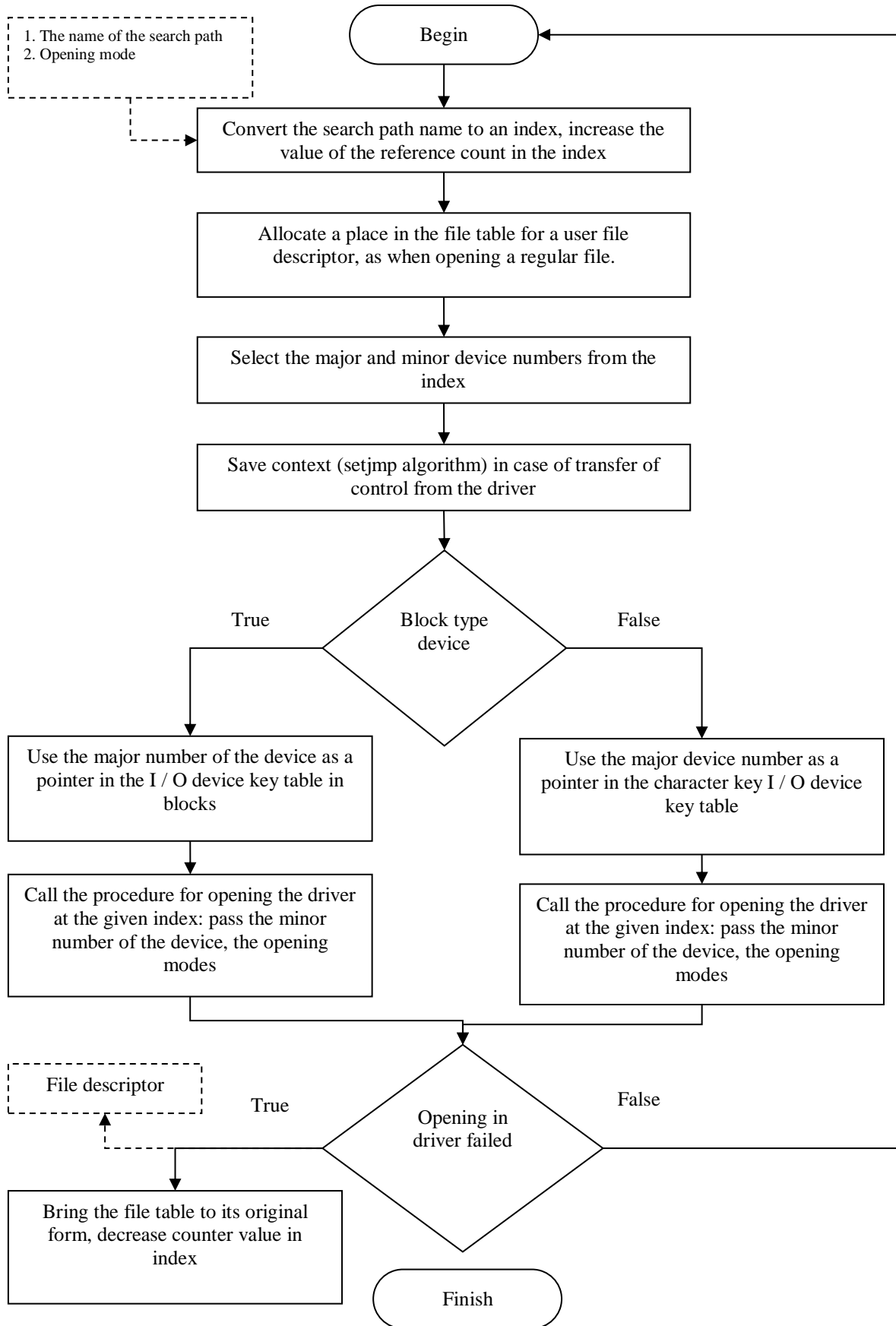
### MAIN PART

**Sull\_open.** Much of the Linux system can be represented as a file. What operations are performed with files more often - opening, reading, writing and closing. Also with device drivers, you can open, close, read and write to the device [9].

Therefore, in the file operations structure, you can see such fields as: read, write, open, and. release are the basic operations that the driver can perform [7].

**Impact Factor:**

<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>ПИИЦ (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350



**Figure. 2. Block diagram of the device opening algorithm**

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350

```
int scull_open(struct inode *inode, struct file *flip)
{
    struct scull_dev *dev;
    dev = container_of(inode->i_cdev, struct
scull_dev, cdev);
    flip->private_data = dev;
    if ((flip->f_flags & O_ACCMODE) ==
O_WRONLY) {
        if (down_interruptible(&dev-
>sem))
            return -ERESTARTSYS;
        scull_trim(dev);
        up(&dev->sem);
    }
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: device is
opened\n");

    return 0;
}
```

*The function takes two arguments:*

A pointer to an inode structure. An inode structure is an inode that stores information about files, directories, and file system objects.

A pointer to the file structure. The structure that is created by the kernel each time the file is opened contains the information needed by the upper levels of the kernel [1-3].

The main function of scull open is to initialize the device (if the device is opened for the first time) and fill in the necessary fields of the structures for its correct operation. Since the device does nothing, there is nothing to initialize.

*Further we will execute several actions:*

```
dev = container_of(inode->i_cdev, struct
scull_dev, cdev);
flip->private_data = dev;
```

In the above code, using container\_of, we obtain a pointer to cdev of type struct scull\_dev using inode-> i\_cdev. The resulting pointer is recorded in the private\_data field.

```
if ((flip->f_flags & O_ACCMODE) ==
O_WRONLY) {...
```

Further, if the file is open for writing, it is cleared before use and a message is displayed that the device is open (Fig. 2).

**scull\_read.** When a read function is called, several arguments are passed to it.

```
ssize_t scull_read(struct file *flip, char __user
*buf, size_t count,
```

```
loff_t *f_pos)
{
    struct scull_dev *dev = flip->private_data;
    struct scull_qset *dqptr;
    int quantum = dev->quantum, qset = dev-
>qset;
    int itemsize = quantum * qset;
    int item, s_pos, q_pos, rest;
    ssize_t rv = 0;

    if (down_interruptible(&dev->sem))
        return -ERESTARTSYS;
    if (*f_pos >= dev->size) {
        printk(KERN_INFO "scull: *f_pos
more than size %lu\n", dev->size);
        goto out;
    }
    if (*f_pos + count > dev->size) {
        printk(KERN_INFO "scull: correct
count\n");
        count = dev->size - *f_pos;
    }
    item = (long)*f_pos / itemsize;
    rest = (long)*f_pos % itemsize;

    s_pos = rest / quantum;
    q_pos = rest % quantum;
    dqptr = scull_follow(dev, item);
    if (dqptr == NULL || !dqptr->data || !dqptr-
>data[s_pos])
        goto out;
    if (count > quantum - q_pos)
        count = quantum - q_pos;
    if (copy_to_user(buf, dqptr->data[s_pos] +
q_pos, count)) {
        rv = -EFAULT;
        goto out;
    }
    *f_pos += count;
    rv = count;
out:
    up(&dev->sem);
    return rv;
}
```

buf - is a pointer to a string, and \_user reports that this pointer is in user space. The argument passes the user [2].

count - the number of bytes to read. The argument passes the user.

f\_pos - bias. The argument passes the kernel. That is, when the user wants to read from the device, the read function (not scull\_read) is called, while indicating the buffer where the information and the number of read bytes will be written [10].

```
if (*f_pos >= dev->size) {
```

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI</b> (Russia) = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

```
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: *f_pos more
than size %lu\n", dev->size);
    goto out;
}

if (*f_pos + count > dev->size) {
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: correct
count\n");
    count = dev->size - *f_pos;
}
```

### Checks:

1. If the offset is greater than the file size then read no longer works. An error is displayed and exits the function [6].
2. If the sum of the current offset and the size of the data to be read is greater than the size of the quantum, then the size of the data to be read is corrected and report the message to the top.

```
if (copy_to_user(buf, dptr->data[s_pos] + q_pos,
count)) {
    rv = -EFAULT;
    goto out;
}
```

copy\_to\_user - copies data to buf (which is in user space) from the memory allocated by the kernel dptr-> data [s\_pos] size count.

**scull\_write.** The scull\_write function is very similar to scull\_read [4-8].

```
ssize_t scull_write(struct file *flip, const char
__user *buf, size_t count, loff_t *f_pos)
{
    struct scull_dev *dev = flip->private_data;
    struct scull_qset *dptr;
    int quantum = dev->quantum, qset = dev-
>qset;

    int itemsize = quantum * qset;
    int item, s_pos, q_pos, rest;
    ssize_t rv = -ENOMEM;

    if(down_interruptible(&dev->sem))
        return -ERESTARTSYS;
    item = (long)*f_pos / itemsize;
    rest = (long)*f_pos % itemsize;
    s_pos = rest / quantum;
    q_pos = rest % quantum;
    dptr = scull_follow(dev, item);

    if (dptr == NULL)
        goto out;

    if (!dptr->data) {
```

```
    dptr->data = kmalloc(qset * sizeof(char *),
GFP_KERNEL);
    if (!dptr->data)
        goto out;
    memset(dptr->data, 0, qset * sizeof(char *));
}
```

```
    if (!dptr->data[s_pos]) {
        dptr->data[s_pos]=kmalloc(quantum,
GFP_KERNEL);
        if (!dptr->data[s_pos])
            goto out;
    }
    if (count > quantum - q_pos)
        count = quantum - q_pos;
    if(copy_from_user(dptr->data[s_pos]
+
q_pos, buf, count)) {
        rv = -EFAULT;
        goto out;
    }
```

```
*f_pos += count;
rv = count;
if (dev->size < *f_pos)
    dev->size = *f_pos;
```

```
out:
    up(&dev->sem);
    return rv;
}
```

### Simplified code:

```
#include <linux/module.h>
#include <linux/kernel.h>
#include <linux/fs.h>
#include <linux/cdev.h>
#include <linux/semaphore.h>
#include <linux/uaccess.h>

int scull_minor = 0;
int scull_major = 0;

struct char_device {
    char data[100];
} device;
struct cdev *p_cdev;
ssize_t scull_read(struct file *flip, char __user
*buf, size_t count, loff_t *f_pos)
{
    int rv;
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: read from
device\n");
    rv=copy_to_user(buf, device.data, count);
    return rv;
}
```

## Impact Factor:

<b>ISRA</b> (India) = <b>3.117</b>	<b>SIS</b> (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	<b>ICV</b> (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
<b>ISI</b> (Dubai, UAE) = <b>0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI</b> (Russia) = <b>0.156</b>	<b>PIF</b> (India) = <b>1.940</b>
<b>GIF</b> (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	<b>ESJI</b> (KZ) = <b>8.716</b>	<b>IBI</b> (India) = <b>4.260</b>
<b>JIF</b> = <b>1.500</b>	<b>SJIF</b> (Morocco) = <b>5.667</b>	<b>OAJI</b> (USA) = <b>0.350</b>

```
ssize_t scull_write(struct file *flip, char __user
*buf, size_t count, loff_t *f_pos)
{
    int rv;
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: write to
device\n");
    rv = copy_from_user(device.data, buf,
count);
    return rv;
}

int scull_open(struct inode *inode, struct file
*flip)
{
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: device is
opened\n");
    return 0;
}

int scull_release(struct inode *inode, struct file
*flip)
{
    printk(KERN_INFO "scull: device is
closed\n");
    return 0;
}

struct file_operations scull_fops = {
    .owner=THIS_MODULE,
    .read = scull_read,
    .write = scull_write,
    .open = scull_open,
    .release = scull_release,
};

void scull_cleanup_module(void)
{
    dev_t devno = MKDEV(scull_major,
scull_minor);
    cdev_del(p_cdev);
    unregister_chrdev_region(devno, 1);
}

static int scull_init_module(void)
{
    int rv;
    dev_t dev;
    rv = alloc_chrdev_region(&dev,
scull_minor, 1, "scull");
```

```
if (rv) {
    printk(KERN_WARNING "scull:
can't get major %d\n", scull_major);
    return rv;
}
scull_major = MAJOR(dev);
p_cdev = cdev_alloc();
cdev_init(p_cdev, &scull_fops);
p_cdev->owner = THIS_MODULE;
p_cdev->ops = &scull_fops;
rv = cdev_add(p_cdev, dev, 1);
if (rv)
    printk(KERN_NOTICE "Error %d adding
scull", rv);
printk(KERN_INFO "scull: register device
major = %d minor = %d\n", scull_major,
scull_minor);
return 0;
}

MODULE_AUTHOR("Ochilov Nizomiddin");
MODULE_LICENSE("GPL");

module_init(scull_init_module);
module_exit(scull_cleanup_module);
```

## CONCLUSION

The article presents the principle of implementation of a special-purpose of the device driver for secure Linux operating systems. The basics of an I / O device through mapped memory and macros used in memory allocation are discussed. As a practical example of allocating resources for an I / O device through the displayed memory, the code from the already debugged driver was given. The mechanisms for initializing and deleting devices in the Linux operating system kernel have been proposed and clarified. An optimized algorithm for initializing and deleting devices in the kernel of the Linux safe operating system has been developed, which makes it possible to optimize the running time of the algorithm by reducing the number of unnecessary functions in the code. The algorithm is designed for protected Linux OS class 2A.

Thus, the article describes the procedure for working with kernel components. Using the acquired skills, you can develop your own kernel module and build security mechanisms in it.

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

## References:

1. Torvalds, L., & Diamond, D. (2002). *For Fun = Just for fun*. (p.288). Moscow: EKSMO-Press. ISBN 5-04-009285-7.
2. Love, R. (2006). *Linux kernel development = Linux Kernel Development*. 2nd ed. (p.448). Moscow: Williams. ISBN 0-672-32720-1.
3. Rodriguez, K. Z., Fisher, G., & Smolski, S. (2007). *Linux: ABC of the kernel*. (p.584). SPb: KUDITS-PRESS. ISBN 978-5-91136-017-7.
4. Barret, D. (2007). *Linux: basic commands*. Pocket guide. 2nd ed. (p.288). SPb.: KUDITS-PRESS. ISBN 5-9579-0050-8.
5. Torvalds, L. (2015). *Linux Format = Linux format*. (p.228). Moscow: EKSMO-Press. ISBN 0-04-009183-1.
6. Ochilov, N. N. (2019). The Driver for the Scull\_Open Discovery Function, Read / Write Scull\_Read / Scull\_Write For a Protected Linux OS // *International Journal of Computer Science Engineering and Information Technology Research (IJCSEITR)*. c. India, Vol - Issue: 9-1, 30 June, pp.31-42.
7. Palix, N., Thomas, G., Saha, S., Calves, C., Lawall, J., & Muller, C. (2011). *Faults in Linux: Ten years later*. Proceedings of the sixteenth international conference on Architectural support for programming languages and operating systems (ASPLOS '11), USA.
8. Tixomirov, V. P., & Davidov, M. I. (1988). *Operatsionnaya sistema UNIX: Instrumentalnûe sredstva programirovaniya*. (p.206). Moscow: Finansû i statistika.
9. Stolyarov, A. V. (2009). *Operatsionnaya sreda UNIX dlya izuchayûix programirovanie*. MGU im. Lomonosova, fakultet VMiK, Moskva.
10. Ball, T., Bounimova, E., Kumar, R., & Levin, V. (2010). *SLAM2: Static Driver Verification with Under 4% False Alarms*. FMCAD.



<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHHI (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

## Contents

	p.
7. <b>Secretaria, N. M.</b> The e-commerce revolution: status, awareness and demographics of farmers in Cebu city. ....	101-109
8. <b>Kozhevnikov, V. A., Slupko, N. M., &amp; Sergeev, A. V.</b> Design and development of personal finance management system. ....	110-115
9. <b>Jurayeva, B. M.</b> Linguacognitive peculiarities of Uzbek national proverbs formed on the base of lexical semantic group of “bird”. ....	116-119
10. <b>Kasimova, R. R., Ziyadullayev, A. R., &amp; Ziyadullayeva, A. A.</b> Comparison of ceremonies and legends associated with the belief in reverence for water. ....	120-124
11. <b>Zinatullaev, Z. I.</b> Arab caliphate in central Asia to be taken coverage of the issue of sources. ....	125-127
12. <b>Khatamov, T. A.</b> State national program for the development of school education for 2004–2009 years: (scientific and historical analysis). ....	128-132
13. <b>Yaminov, A. A.</b> Ideological foundations of ibn Sina’s philosophy. ....	133-136
14. <b>Tokhtiev, S. R.</b> The role of Ismailism and its sects in the history of Shiism. ....	137-144
15. <b>Baklanov, A. N., &amp; Baklanova L. V.</b> Solution to the safety problems of arterial hypertension patients. Development of special salt mixture. ....	145-150
16. <b>Dimitriev, Y. K.</b> Conditions of local self-diagnosis and efficiency of their use for different models of unreliable tests. ....	151-163
17. <b>Shkurina, M. V., &amp; Sabinin, O. Y.</b> Comparative analysis of extractive text summarization methods for texts in Russian language. ....	164-169
18. <b>Khairova, D. R.</b> Issues of improving urban environmental management efficiency and development of housing and communal economy in the strengthening urbanization conditions. ....	170-178
19. <b>Yurchenko, O. I., Chernozhuk, T. V., &amp; Kravchenko, O. A.</b> Atomic absorption and atomic emission with inductive connected plasma determination of zinc, iron and manganese in salt mines of Bahmut city. ....	179-185
20. <b>Ochilov, N. N.</b> The principle of the implementation of drivers for devices protected by Linux OS. ....	186-191

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHIQ (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = <b>3.117</b>	SIS (USA) = <b>0.912</b>	ICV (Poland) = <b>6.630</b>
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = <b>0.829</b>	ПИИЦ (Russia) = <b>0.156</b>	PIF (India) = <b>1.940</b>
	GIF (Australia) = <b>0.564</b>	ESJI (KZ) = <b>8.716</b>	IBI (India) = <b>4.260</b>
	JIF = <b>1.500</b>	SJIF (Morocco) = <b>5.667</b>	OAJI (USA) = <b>0.350</b>



**Scientific publication**

«ISJ Theoretical & Applied Science, USA» - Международный научный журнал зарегистрированный во Франции, и выходящий в электронном и печатном формате. **Препринт** журнала публикуется на сайте по мере поступления статей.

Все поданные авторами статьи в течении 1-го дня размещаются на сайте <http://T-Science.org>.

Печатный экземпляр рассылается авторам в течение 2-4 дней после 30 числа каждого месяца.

**Импакт фактор журнала**

<b>Impact Factor</b>	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019
Impact Factor JIF		<b>1.500</b>					
Impact Factor ISRA (India)		<b>1.344</b>				<b>3.117</b>	
Impact Factor ISI (Dubai, UAE) based on International Citation Report (ICR)	<b>0.307</b>	<b>0.829</b>					
Impact Factor GIF (Australia)	<b>0.356</b>	<b>0.453</b>	<b>0.564</b>				
Impact Factor SIS (USA)	<b>0.438</b>	<b>0.912</b>					
Impact Factor ПИИЦ (Russia)		<b>0.179</b>	<b>0.224</b>	<b>0.207</b>	<b>0.156</b>		
Impact Factor ESJI (KZ) based on Eurasian Citation Report (ECR)		<b>1.042</b>	<b>1.950</b>	<b>3.860</b>	<b>4.102</b>	<b>6.015</b>	<b>8.716</b>
Impact Factor SJIF (Morocco)		<b>2.031</b>				<b>5.667</b>	
Impact Factor ICV (Poland)		<b>6.630</b>					
Impact Factor PIF (India)		<b>1.619</b>	<b>1.940</b>				
Impact Factor IBI (India)			<b>4.260</b>				
Impact Factor OAJI (USA)						<b>0.350</b>	

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	ISRA (India) = 3.117	SIS (USA) = 0.912	ICV (Poland) = 6.630
	ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829	ПИИЦ (Russia) = 0.156	PIF (India) = 1.940
	GIF (Australia) = 0.564	ESJI (KZ) = 8.716	IBI (India) = 4.260
	JIF = 1.500	SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667	OAJI (USA) = 0.350

INDEXING METADATA OF ARTICLES IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:



International Scientific Indexing ISI (Dubai, UAE)  
<http://isindexing.com/isi/journaldetails.php?id=327>



Research Bible (Japan)  
<http://journalseeker.researchbib.com/?action=viewJournalDetails&issn=23084944&uid=rd1775>



ПИИЦ (Russia)  
<http://elibrary.ru/contents.asp?issueid=1246197>



Türk Eğitim İndeksi (Turkey)  
<http://www.turkegitimindeksi.com/Journals.aspx?ID=149>



DOI (USA)  
<http://www.doi.org>



Open Academic Journals Index (Russia)  
<http://oaji.net/journal-detail.html?number=679>



Japan Link Center (Japan) <https://japanlinkcenter.org>



Kudos Innovations, Ltd. (USA)  
<https://www.growkudos.com>



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, EndNote (USA)  
<https://www.myendnoteweb.com/EndNoteWeb.html>



Scientific Object Identifier (SOI)  
<http://s-o-i.org/>



Google Scholar (USA)  
[http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+t-science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as\\_sdt=0%2C5](http://scholar.google.ru/scholar?q=Theoretical+t-science.org&btnG=&hl=ru&as_sdt=0%2C5)



Directory of abstract indexing for Journals  
<http://www.daij.org/journal-detail.php?jid=94>



CrossRef (USA)  
<http://doi.crossref.org>



Collective IP (USA)  
<https://www.collectiveip.com/>



PFTS Europe/Rebus:list (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.rebuslist.com>



Korean Federation of Science and Technology Societies (Korea)  
<http://www.kofst.or.kr>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India)</b> = 3.117	<b>SIS (USA)</b> = 0.912	<b>ICV (Poland)</b> = 6.630
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE)</b> = 0.829	<b>PIHII (Russia)</b> = 0.156	<b>PIF (India)</b> = 1.940
	<b>GIF (Australia)</b> = 0.564	<b>ESJI (KZ)</b> = 8.716	<b>IBI (India)</b> = 4.260
	<b>JIF</b> = 1.500	<b>SJIF (Morocco)</b> = 5.667	<b>OAJI (USA)</b> = 0.350



AcademicKeys (Connecticut, USA)  
[http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour\\_main.php](http://sciences.academickeys.com/jour_main.php)



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ResearcherID (USA)  
<http://www.researcherid.com/rid/N-7988-2013>



RedLink (Canada)  
<https://www.redlink.com/>



TDNet  
 Library & Information Center Solutions (USA)  
<http://www.tdnet.io/>



RefME (USA & UK)  
<https://www.refme.com>



Sherpa Romeo (United Kingdom)  
<http://www.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/search.php?source=journals&sourceid=28772>



Cl.An. // THOMSON REUTERS, ORCID (USA)  
<http://orcid.org/0000-0002-7689-4157>



Yewno (USA & UK)  
<http://yewno.com/>



Stratified Medical Ltd. (London, United Kingdom)  
<http://www.stratifiedmedical.com/>

**THE SCIENTIFIC JOURNAL IS INDEXED IN SCIENTOMETRIC BASES:**



Advanced Sciences Index (Germany)  
<http://journal-index.org/>



Global Impact Factor (Australia)  
<http://globalimpactfactor.com/?type=issn&s=2308-4944&submit=Submit>



SCIENTIFIC INDEXING SERVICE (USA)  
<http://sindexs.org/JournalList.aspx?ID=202>



International Society for Research Activity (India)  
<http://www.israjif.org/single.php?did=2308-4944>

## Impact Factor:

ISRA (India) = 3.117  
ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829  
GIF (Australia) = 0.564  
JIF = 1.500

SIS (USA) = 0.912  
ПИИИ (Russia) = 0.156  
ESJI (KZ) = 8.716  
SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667

ICV (Poland) = 6.630  
PIF (India) = 1.940  
IBI (India) = 4.260  
OAJI (USA) = 0.350



CiteFactor (USA) Directory Indexing of International Research Journals

<http://www.citefactor.org/journal/index/11362/theoretical-applied-science>



International Institute of Organized Research (India)

<http://www.i2or.com/indexed-journals.html>



JIFACTOR

JIFACTOR

[http://www.jifactor.org/journal\\_view.php?journal\\_id=2073](http://www.jifactor.org/journal_view.php?journal_id=2073)



Journal Index

<http://journalindex.net/?qi=Theoretical+%26+Applied+Science>



Eurasian Scientific Journal Index (Kazakhstan)

<http://esjindex.org/search.php?id=1>



SJIF Impact Factor (Morocco)

<http://sjifactor.inno-space.net/passport.php?id=18062>



InfoBase Index (India)

<http://infobaseindex.com>



Open Access Journals

<http://www.oajournals.info/>



Indian Citation Index

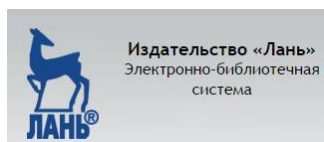
Indian citation index (India)

<http://www.indiancitationindex.com/>



Index Copernicus International (Warsaw, Poland)

<http://journals.indexcopernicus.com/masterlist.php?q=2308-4944>



Электронно-библиотечная система «Издательства «Лань» (Russia)

<http://e.lanbook.com/journal/>

<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHIQ (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---



<b>Impact Factor:</b>	<b>ISRA (India) = 3.117</b>	<b>SIS (USA) = 0.912</b>	<b>ICV (Poland) = 6.630</b>
	<b>ISI (Dubai, UAE) = 0.829</b>	<b>PIHII (Russia) = 0.156</b>	<b>PIF (India) = 1.940</b>
	<b>GIF (Australia) = 0.564</b>	<b>ESJI (KZ) = 8.716</b>	<b>IBI (India) = 4.260</b>
	<b>JIF = 1.500</b>	<b>SJIF (Morocco) = 5.667</b>	<b>OAJI (USA) = 0.350</b>

---

---

Signed in print: 30.06.2019. Size 60x84  $\frac{1}{8}$

«Theoretical & Applied Science» (USA, Sweden, KZ)

Scientific publication, p.sh. 52.5. Edition of 90 copies.

<http://T-Science.org> E-mail: [T-Science@mail.ru](mailto:T-Science@mail.ru)

---

Printed «Theoretical & Applied Science»